



CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR,  
BOOK I.











Elementary Classics

GAI IULI CAESARIS  
DE BELLO GALLICO  
COMMENTARIORUM I.

Edited for the use of Schools

BY

ARTHUR S. WALPOLE, M.A.

FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF WORCESTER COLLEGE, OXFORD

*WITH NOTES AND VOCABULARY*

London

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD.

NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN CO.

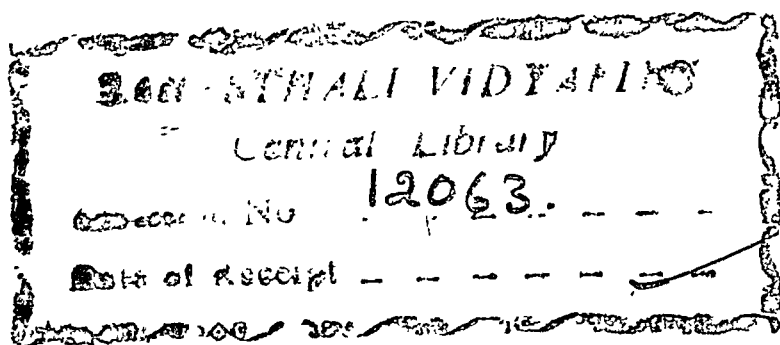
1896

*All rights reserved*



First Edition printed 1882.  
Reprinted 1884, 1886, 1888, 1895, 1896.

GLASGOW: PRINTED AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS  
BY ROBERT MACLEHOSE AND CO.



## PREFACE.

THE Text of this edition agrees in the main with those of Kraner (edited by Dittenberger) and Doberenz. The Notes are the results of actual teaching, corrected and supplemented by a careful examination of the best commentaries, that of Kraner being perhaps the most serviceable. It is well to mention that the Notes and Vocabulary are meant to be used together, as supplementing each other. For many corrections and valuable suggestions I am indebted to the Rev. J. Bond.

March, 1882.

The book has been carefully revised, especially the Vocabulary, with the great advantage of the kind help of the Rev. G. H. Nall.

February, 1895.



# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION, - - - - -	ix
THE ROMAN ARMY, - - - - -	xxiii
CAESAR DE BELLO GALLICO LIBER PRIMUS—	
Helvetian War. Chaps. 2 to 29, - - -	2
German War. Chaps. 30 to end, - - -	23
NOTES, - - - - -	45
VOCABULARY, - - - - -	88
MAP—GAUL IN THE TIME OF CAESAR,	<i>Frontispiece.</i>



## INTRODUCTION.

WHEN the strife between the patricians and plebeians had at last ceased, Rome slowly but steadily began to conquer the world. Not unlike the octopus which, on a comic map of Europe published a few years since, represented Russia, she threw her long-reaching arms on all sides, and what these once reached they also held. By the beginning of the 1st century B.C. Rome might already be said to be the mistress of the world. Meanwhile, however, simplicity and virtue had given place to vice and refinement, and the nobility which governed the world was itself rotten to the core. Tiberius Gracchus in B.C. 133, and his young brother Gaius twelve years later, essayed to stay the plague-spot of corruption: but they acted unwisely, and each perished in his vain attempt. The Juggernaut of wealth and office trampled them under foot, and, though vengeance was sure, it was limping and

The rotten  
state of the  
society into  
which Caesar  
was born.

slow ; in appearance the Senate's sway was stronger than ever. But the patriciate which in days of old had been influential and beloved, now stank in the nostrils of the people. Soon, too, sprang up a foe far more formidable than the Gracchi. C. Marius, a man of the people, found the army a disorderly rabble : he restored it to a state of discipline, and so rendered it once more efficient and invincible. The darling of the soldiers and of the crowd, who saw in him their only means of emancipation from the thralldom which oppressed them, he attacked the nobles with all the bitterness of his rough and savage nature : but in matters politic he was no match for his patrician opponent, Lucius Cornelius Sulla, who took up the cause of the nobles, desperate as it was, and who actually succeeded in putting away for a time the coming catastrophe. But the season for mild remedies had long since gone by : the knife was needed to remove the mortified limb. The time and the man were at hand.

On the 12th day of July, B.C. 102,<sup>1</sup> the year which witnessed the destruction of the Teutoni by C. Marius, the future dictator was born. His father's sister had been given in marriage to Marius, and the training of his

Caesar's birth  
and early life,  
B.C. 102-82.

<sup>1</sup> According to Professor Mommsen. The date usually given is B.C. 100.

childhood taught him to look upon the popular party with respect. While yet a youth the vote of the people in the assembly of the Tribes conferred on him the office of Flamen Dialis, or priest of Jupiter, a proceeding which reminds one of the boy-bishops of the Middle Ages. Nor, when we bear in mind the hollow nature of the armed truce between the Few and the Many, was the vote of the people without significance, not to say without ill-omen. At the age of nineteen he married the daughter of Cinna. Cinna, during the bloody strife between Marius and Sulla, was a prominent, after Marius himself *the* prominent, member of the revolutionary party at Rome, which aimed at nothing less than the subversion of the corrupt oligarchy which had shown itself so unable to govern. The nephew of one arch-democrat and son-in-law of another could hardly hope to escape Sulla's watchful eye. The dictator sternly bade him give up his wife, and Gaius' spirited refusal so enraged the tyrant that only with the utmost difficulty was his life saved.

Seeing that Rome was no place for him just now, he took part in the wars then going on in the East, and distinguished himself therein. On Sulla's death (B.C. 78) he again returned to Rome; but in the premature outbreak of Lepidus, the political turn-coat, who after trying to change Sulla's constitution broke out

In the East,  
B.C. 81-78. In  
Rome, B.C. 78.



into armed resistance, he took no part. Like all truly great minds, he could wait for the right time and not strike until a blow would be decisive. And, as Suetonius tells us, he doubtless mistrusted Lepidus as a fitting colleague in that regeneration of the

Caesar prosecuted Dolabella, B.C. 77.

State which he had already marked out as his life-work. This policy was begun by an attack on Dolabella. He had as proconsul oppressed Macedonia in the most shameless manner. Lust, greed, and rapine had marked his rule, and the young Caesar had indeed an excellent case. But vested interests were at stake, and the whole body of nobles, as well they might, took fright and rose as one man. Gold was freely thrown on all sides to ensure the acquittal of the guilty oligarch: his judges were not only his personal friends, but also afraid, living as they did in glass houses, to throw stones. The young Caesar,

In Rhodes.

perhaps by the advice of his friend and neighbour Cicero, went to Rhodes to study under the great rhetorician Apollonius Molo, where he continued to educate himself for his life's task. Above all, he learned what then could be gained so well nowhere else—the power of eloquence, and a man who would move crowds must needs be

Among the pirates.

eloquent. On his voyage thither he was taken by the pirates who, to the disgrace of the Roman generals, infested those seas. The

mischance nearly cut his life short, but in the end it did but bring out in a characteristic manner his promptness and energy. Released on the payment of a ransom of fifty talents, the self-same day he gathered a force at Miletus, surprised his late captors while they were yet feasting on the proceeds of their ill-gotten gains, and there and then crucified them as a terror and example to others.

On his return soon after this to Rome, <sup>Again at Rome.</sup> he found the star of the Senate in the ascendant: Metellus, Lucullus, Crassus, and Pompey were occupying the chief state offices. But Caesar was still the people's favourite, and he proceeded to ingratiate himself with them still more. He did not indeed thrust himself forward, but each act of high-handed robbery—and these were not few—surrendered a valuable card into the hand of one who knew how to play it, and gave him more influence with the people, who were sooner or later to settle matters with their old foes. The cause of the aristocracy was indeed rotten. Verres,

a young noble, during his three years' <sup>Verres.</sup> stay as Pro-praetor in Sicily, had in the most cruel manner oppressed that unhappy island. Throughout his tenure of office there had been absolutely no security for property, no safety for honour or life. The young magistrate who represented "the city" was a monster of wickedness, the incarnation

of cruelty the most heartless, of greed the most unprincipled, of lust the most unbridled: he spared neither things human nor the temples of the gods, and even crucified a Roman citizen in sight of the Italian shores. But he carried his game too far. Cicero had not yet thrown the weight of his magnificent eloquence into the senatorial balance, and, prosecuting in the most determined way, backed up by abundant evidence of guilt only too easily procured, he forced Verres to go into banishment at Marseilles. Such an occurrence was not calculated to strengthen the union of the parties. The revelations disclosed therein opened the eyes of all to the excesses and enormities which were daily enacted in the provinces. For Verres, bad as he was, was but one out of many as bad as himself. In or about

Military  
Tribune.

the year B.C. 69 Caesar was made Military Tribune, and about the same time became allied to Lucius Piso by marrying his daughter Calpurnia on the death of Cornelia. The next year

Quaestor.

(B.C. 68) he became a candidate for the quaestorship, the lowest rung on the ladder of public office. At once he was a hot favourite with the people, in whose hands power already really lay. The nephew of the great Marius and the son-in-law of Cinna had claims on the party of progress which could not be overlooked. In vain did the nobles offer a furious opposition.

Every device, fair or foul, was defeated by the determined attitude of the masses, and the nobles by their bitter hostility hurt only themselves. It was not long before he had an opportunity of showing alike his political sympathies and his courage. For years the name of Marius had been unheard at Rome save in a whisper. But now on the death of his aunt, the widow of Marius, Caesar not only took occasion to praise Marius, but carried his bust in the funeral procession. Moreover not long before he had obtained the recall from exile of Cinna, his wife's brother, and of those members of the conspiracy of Lepidus who after their leader's death had joined Sertorius in Spain. The next year (B.C. 67) Pompey, who in his consulate (B.C. 70) had deserted the senatorial party, had vast powers conferred on him by the Gabinian law; and Caesar, who regarded the step as necessary, and at the same time wished Pompey to be out of the way, warmly supported his claims. Soon after the next step was attained, and Caesar was elected Aedile, with Bibulus for colleague. The division of labour was excellent; for while Bibulus supplied the money, Caesar showed how it could be most advantageously spent. The pair won great favour by their magnificent works, for they decorated the Forum, built the Julian basilica, and, when in the

Openly de-  
fends Marius.

Aedile, B.C. 65.

games they were restricted to 320 pairs of gladiators, they accoutred these with silver. Two years later

Pontifex  
Maximus.

Caesar became head of the Roman religion, by being elected *pontifex maximus*.

His popularity was unbounded, but his head was still cool, and it is impossible to believe that he took any part whatever in the conspiracy headed

Catilina, B.C.  
63.

by the dissolute traitor Catilina. Indeed the only grounds on which such conduct has been attributed to him lay in the wise speech in which he advised the Senate to spare the con-

Praetor, B.C.  
62; Pro-prae-  
tor, B.C. 61.

spirators' lives. The next year he was Praetor, and in the year following that Pro-praetor in Spain, busy in subduing the unruly tribes in the North and West. Here first he gave evidence of that brilliant generalship with which his name is now connected. He was proclaimed as Imperator by his soldiers, and the Senate, grudgingly but of necessity, gave him the honour of a triumph. On his return to Rome he formed that coalition with Pompey and Crassus

First Trium-  
virate, B.C. 60.

which is usually known as the First Triumvirate. The three were in truth incongruous enough, but were held together for the time, partly by community of interests, partly by the personal influence of Caesar himself. The coalition presented a double front, opposing on the one hand the Senate, on the other hand the extreme

radicals. Crassus, the capitalist, wished the coming changes which were seen to be inevitable to be as slight as possible. The next year saw Caesar consul; and as in his aedileship, and again in the praetorship, so now Bibulus <sup>Consul, B.C. 59.</sup> was again his colleague. But the agreement between the colleagues was now less happy. Bibulus was a devoted adherent of the aristocratic party, but was quite unable to resist the measures of Caesar, and soon shut himself up in his house, thereby virtually abdicating office and leaving the field clear for energetic action. The measures which were thus passed with comparative ease were both many in number and important in character. All the Senate's transactions were to be published; an agrarian law (like that of Rullus five years before, but less crude) was passed; just relief was given to the wealthy and influential knights; Ptolemy of Egypt and Ariovistus the German were proclaimed "friends of the Roman people"; the worst grievances of the provinces were remedied; and bribery was checked. In the meanwhile Bibulus was watching the heavens and declaring all these doings invalid, but his voice was disregarded: and the joke was current that the two consuls were Julius and Caesar. Vatinius, tribune of <sup>Lex Vatinia.</sup> the people and a creature of Caesar, proposed and passed a bill which gave Caesar

command in Cisalpine Gaul for three years with five legions; the Senate, not to be outdone in generosity, added another legion, and extended his proconsular powers over Further Gaul and the Alps. He stayed near Rome long enough to ensure the election of his friends and to prevent the repeal of the laws which had been so lately passed. He did

In Gaul. not arrive in Gaul before his presence there was necessary. The Helvetii, a powerful and numerous Gallic tribe occupying the greater part of what is now called Switzerland, had

The Helvetii, shown signs of restlessness. This people  
B.C. 58. had some fifty years before come in contact with the Romans, for in B.C. 107 the Tigurini (one of their four cantons) had inflicted a crushing defeat on the Consul Lucius Cassius Longinus, and this the Romans had never forgiven.

Orgetorix. Now (B.C. 61) the chief man among them, Orgetorix by name, tried to persuade them to go forth and seek for wider and more fertile territories in Gaul. The most energetic measures were taken in hand, and Orgetorix was chosen to superintend the preparations, the setting out being formally fixed for the third year (B.C. 58). Though Orgetorix himself was convicted of treason and put an end to his own life, the Helvetii did not abandon their plan, allies being gained where possible. There were two, and only two, routes by which to get

into Gaul. One of these, that namely through the Sequani, was so beset by natural difficulties that they at once abandoned it. Choice of route.

The other, which passed through the territory of the Allobroges and so across the Province, was alone possible, and the Helvetii determined to attempt this. On the 28th of March the vast procession began its exodus, and consisted of 368,000 persons, of whom 92,000 were men capable of bearing arms. Caesar hurried to Geneva and utterly destroyed the bridge there existing. The Helvetii were confounded by this prompt action, and sent ambassadors to Caesar to request a passage through "the Province." Caesar Caesar's measures of defence. did not entertain the proposal for a

moment, but his plans of defence were not yet complete, and he bade them come back on the 13th of April, for his final answer. In the meanwhile he fortified the left (south) bank of the Rhone, and when the ambassadors returned he flatly refused any concessions. The Helvetii tried to force their way across, but found it impossible, owing to the strength of the current and the fortifications which had recently been erected. Baffled as they were, they were obliged to turn to the Sequani, who allowed them to pass through their territory. They then passed on into the Change of route. country of the Aedui, who at once applied to Caesar



for aid. He meanwhile had raised fresh levies in North Italy, for he saw that energetic action was necessary. Pursuing the Helvetii, he came upon them when three parts of their forces had crossed the Saône; the fourth, which happened to be the Tigurini, he cut to pieces. The Helvetii sued for peace, but not in a tone likely to win <sup>Ineffectual negotiations.</sup> Caesar's favour; and when he demanded hostages and satisfaction for the injuries done, the negotiations were abruptly broken off. Caesar determined to follow the Helvetii at a short distance, and did so for fifteen days. Then an opportunity of attacking them simultaneously in front <sup>Caesar follows the Helvetii:</sup> and rear was frustrated by the false intelligence brought by one of his officers. At last Caesar was tired of this waiting game, and made with all speed for Bibracte. The Gauls thought that Caesar was running away, and in their turn were the pursuers. This was Caesar's object: he was enabled to take them at a disadvantage and to <sup>defeats them near Bibracte.</sup> inflict on them a crushing defeat. The slaughter was immense, and the survivors were sent back home to form a barrier against the tide of Germans who were pressing on into ever more dangerous proximity to Roman territory.

The Gallic tribes poured congratulations on Caesar, at the same time drawing his attention to the tyrannical conduct of Ariovistus, king of the

Germans. The arrogance of this barbarian raised Caesar's anger, while he saw that the allies of Rome must be protected and <sup>Ariovistus</sup> the onrush of Germans into Gaul stayed. Accordingly he invited Ariovistus to a conference, and on his refusal forbade him to bring any more Germans into Gaul or to hurt the Aedui. The answer was defiant, and Caesar alarmed at hearing that fresh tribes of Germans were on their way to join Ariovistus, determined to attack him before the junction could be effected. By one of his night and day marches he managed to anticipate the Germans and throw himself into Vesontio (Besancon), which was by nature impregnable. Ariovistus marched on, now closely pursued by Caesar (whose army a panic had almost driven to mutiny), and after a conference which was broken up by German treachery the two armies came up with each other. For some days the Germans refused to fight, but at last, when forced to do so, were defeated with great slaughter, and pursued to the Rhine. Caesar, leaving Labienus in charge of the winter-quarters <sup>is defeated.</sup> (although it was not yet October), himself returned into Cisalpine Gaul.

The rest of Caesar's life must be very briefly told. In the course of the next few years he succeeded in thoroughly conquering and <sup>B.C. 58-51.</sup> civilizing Gaul, and in crossing over into Britain.

On the death of Pompey he was without a rival; and at his death he had been five times consul, four times dictator; he was dictator elect for life, *præfectus morum*, tribune of the people, *princeps senatus*, *imperator*. His murder, the result partly of fanaticism, partly of personal hate, robbed Rome of her greatest citizen.

His powers and genius were simply astonishing. A brilliant leader, a skilful engineer, a profound jurist, a scientific astronomer, an eloquent orator and accomplished poet—there was no region, practical or theoretical, into which he did not travel with the greatest success. The Commentaries in which he simply told the story of his Gallic wars are a model of what such writing should be, and are equally valuable for the student of the Latin language or of the military art.

*[Reprinted from Mr. Rutherford's Edition of Books II. and  
III. of 'CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR' in the same series.]*

## THE ROMAN ARMY.

THE Romans were a nation of soldiers, and it is necessary to know something about the Roman army in order to understand the writings of the greatest Roman general. Every one knows how Rome was not built without bloodshed ; and it was by fire and sword, by blood and iron, that she pushed forward year by year the boundaries of her empire. But, except in point of discipline, the legions of Caesar bore little resemblance to the citizen host which Romulus had led to victory seven centuries before. The history of the Roman Army divides itself into periods, but it is impossible to understand accurately the military terms of a later period without knowing something of those which preceded.

We will give a slight outline of the military systems previous to that which was in use when Caesar fought in Gaul. In the time of the kings the order of battle was the phalanx, in which the soldiers formed one compact mass. Camillus, at the beginning of the fourth century

b.c., is said to have broken the phalanx up into smaller bodies, called *manipuli*, capable of acting separately, but trained to act in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. The first line was composed of the youngest men, the second of men in the full vigour of life, and the third of veterans. These three lines were called respectively *Hastati*, *Principes*, and *Triarii*, and each contained ten *manipuli*, drawn up separately at a short distance from each other. The legion so drawn up presented a chequer formation :

Hastati	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Principes	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Triarii	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Each *manipulus* was divided into two *centuriæ*, each of which was commanded by a *centurio*. The centurion commanding the right wing (*centurio prior*) had command of the whole manipule. Under him was the centurion in command of the left wing (*centurio posterior*). The men of each legion were distributed among thirty maniples. Light troops (*velites*) were attached, twenty to each century. Thus in tabular form :—

Hastati	10	maniples of 120 men=	20	centuries of 60 men=	1200
Principes	10	„	120 „ =20	„	60 „ =1200
Triarii	10	„	60 „ =20	„	30 „ = 600
	<u>30</u>		<u>60</u>		<u>3000</u>
		To every century 20 velites	...	...	...
					<u>1200</u>
					<u>4200</u>

In the chequer formation the intervals between the maniples were of the same length as the front of a

maniple, and were utilized in the following way :—The first line, when compelled to retire, drew off between the intervals of the Principes, while the Principes advanced to the attack. Meanwhile the Triarii remained kneeling behind their shields. If the Principes were also forced to give way, they retired upon the Triarii, who received them and the Hastati into the intervals between their maniples, and advanced in one long unbroken line upon the enemy.

Attached to the legion were three hundred cavalry. They were divided into ten *turmae*, or squadrons of thirty men, each *turma* being commanded by three *decuriones* and three subordinate officers, called *optiones*.

The Allies (*Socii*)—that is, the Italian States subject to Rome—had to supply as many infantry soldiers as Rome sent into the field, and three times as many cavalry. From the fact that in battle they were placed upon the wings of the Roman legions, they were sometimes designated by the words *ala*, *alarii*, or *cohortes alariae*. A fifth part of their infantry and a third part of their cavalry formed a select body called *extraordinarii*, or *cohortes extraordinariae*.

Both Romans and Allies were equipped in the same manner. Of defensive armour all three lines of the legion had the full suit. It consisted of helmet, shield, cuirass, and greaves. The helmet was of iron (*cassis*), or of leather mounted with bronze (*galea*), and was sometimes furnished with a crest (*crista*) of red or black feathers. The iron helmet gradually superseded the helmet of leather, but the word *galea* replaced *cassis*. The shield (*scutum*) was of strong wood covered with

hide. It was about four feet long and two and a half broad, and bent round so as to present a convex outside. It had a metal rim at each end, and an iron boss (*umbo*) in the middle. The cuirass (*lorica*) appears to have varied much in material and shape. It was sometimes made of plaits or thick strips of leather overlapping one another, the chest being protected by a plate of iron about nine inches square. Under the Empire it was generally formed of two plates of metal over the chest, and long flexible bands of steel over the shoulders and round the waist. The greaves (*ocreae*) reached to the knee or above it, and were commonly of bronze. It soon became customary to wear only one, the left leg being seldom exposed by a swordsman covered with a shield.

The offensive armour consisted of two weapons. One was the short, straight, two-edged Spanish sword (*gladius Hispanus*), adapted for stabbing rather than for cutting. It hung by a leather belt (*balteus*) over the shoulder, or from a girdle (*cingulum*). Private soldiers wore the sword on the right side, in order that the shield, which was carried on the left arm, might not prevent its being easily drawn. Officers, who carried no shields, carried the sword, as is now done, on the left side. Each of the Triarii carried the long pike (*hasta*), which had originally been confined to the Hastati. The Hastati and the Principes carried the *pilum*. The *pilum* was only used as a missile, and consisted of a wooden shaft about one and a half inch thick and four and a half feet long. The iron part of the weapon was as long as the wood, but since it came down over the shaft the whole measured about six and three-quarter feet in length.

Soft iron was used in its construction, that by bending in the shield or other armour of the enemy it might hamper his movements, and when pulled out become unserviceable.

The cavalry wore an iron cuirass, a helmet, and leather leggings. They carried a serviceable shield, a heavy lance, and a long sword.

Such were the formation and equipment of the Roman Army till the time of Marius, about 100 B.C. Even before that date some considerable changes had been made. The manipuli had been massed into larger bodies, called *cohortes*, each cohort containing six centuries or three maniples—one maniple of Hastati, one of Principes, and one of Triarii. Moreover, the hasta was transferred from the Hastati to the Triarii; and at one time the Triarii must have carried the pilum when the other two lines were armed with the hasta. For the two first lines are occasionally designated *antepilani*; and the first centurion of the legion, who was also the first of the Triarii, was called *primipilus*, or *primi pili centurio*, a name which he always retained.

The military period into which Caesar's campaigns fall began with the reforms of Marius. The lower classes of the Roman populace, who had hitherto been excluded from service, were now made eligible, and even freedmen (*libertini*) were admitted to the legions. The division into Hastati, Principes, and Triarii entirely disappeared. The pilum became the common weapon of all legionaries. The cohort displaced the maniple as the basis of the military formation. As a result of the Social War (91–89 B.C.) the *Socii Italici* became Roman citizens, and from that



date the distinction between *legiones* and *Socii* was dropped. A Roman army now consisted of Romans and auxiliary troops. There were no Velites. All legionary soldiers were *militēs gravis armaturae*. In Caesar's army all light troops (*militēs levis armaturae*) are auxiliaries. Such were the slingers (*funditores*), who shot stones (*lapides*) or lead bullets (*glandes*), and the archers (*sagittarii*). They came principally from Crete and the Balearic islands. The cavalry consisted wholly of foreign troops—Gauls, Germans, Spaniards. Some were attached to the legions in the old fashion. The rest formed an arm distinct from the legion. Hence such phrases as *legionarii equites*. They were commanded by a Roman, and subdivided into *alae*, which were commanded by *praefecti equitum*, generally Romans, sometimes men of the same race as their troop. The *alae* were split up into *turmae* and *decuriae*.

Though the full strength of a legion was from 4500 to 5000 infantry, it usually fell far short of these numbers. One of Caesar's legions on active service would rarely number more than 3000 or 3600 men. Such a legion contained 10 cohorts of 300 to 360 men, each cohort 3 maniples of 100 to 120 men, each manipulus 2 centuries of 50 to 60 men. The men stood ten deep. For *centuria*, which does not occur often, *ordo* is sometimes used. Thus, *ducere ordinem* means "to be a centurion."

On the field of battle the cohorts were commonly drawn up in a triple formation. Of the ten cohorts four formed the first line, three the second, and three the third. A space equal to the length of the front of a cohort separated

the cohorts of each of the first two lines from one another, and each line from that behind.

<u>4</u>	<u>3</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>1</u>
	7	6	5
10		9	8

This is the *triplex acies*, so often mentioned by Caesar. The best troops of the legion were assigned to the first cohort.

Other formations were (1) the straight line ; (2) the wedge, *cuneus* ; (3) the *orbis*, a solid or hollow square, adopted in cases when the enemy was much superior in numbers.

The order in which troops on the march were arranged varied with the circumstances. When no danger was apprehended, the army marched in single column, each legion followed by its own baggage, and the cavalry riding either on the flanks or rear. In an enemy's country the great length of such a column would have invited an attack, and it was abandoned. The baggage trains of the separate legions were now thrown together, and, having been increased by the packs of the men, were placed in the centre. The troops marched ready for fight.

By marching in battle array we understand the *acies triplex* retained. The four cohorts of the first line formed the first column ; the 5th, 6th, 7th, the second column ; and the 8th, 9th, 10th, the third column. In case of

attack, each column had only to deploy right and left in order to present the customary order of battle.

The *agmen quadratum* was a hollow square, corresponding to the *orbis* on the field of battle. It was used in the neighbourhood of the enemy, especially if cavalry or light troops were hovering round. The baggage was placed in the middle.

*Officers of a Roman Army.*—The commander-in-chief before proceeding on a campaign received by a *lex curiata*, or law of the old Patrician assembly, the ratification of his *imperium militare*. He then took the vows in the Capitol, and assumed the *paludamentum* or cloak of scarlet wool embroidered with gold—the exclusive badge of his office. He was *dux belli*, but the number of his troops was settled by the Senate, which also reserved to itself the power of recalling him, of making peace, and settling other important questions. But in Gaul Caesar was autocratic, and could increase his forces at pleasure; make war or conclude peace without consulting the Senate.

The *legati* were adjutants of the *Imperator*. They were commonly appointed by the Senate, and were generally three in number. Caesar had ten in Gaul. They belonged to the order of Senators. They were required to yield unquestioning obedience to the Imperator, and were responsible to him. Hence they were chary of beginning enterprises of which the success was not assured. Their successes were ascribed to their commander, as he was answerable for the failure of his adjutants. They commanded divisions in the field, and occasionally held independent commands.

The Quaestors (*quaestores*) had charge of the military chest, and were expected to value and dispose of the booty. Thus it was the quaestors who sold prisoners of war to the dealers (*mangones*) who followed the army. They were occasionally entrusted with a command.

Of the legionary officers the *tribuni militares*, or *militum*, held the highest rank. There were six to each legion. Some were chosen by the people; the rest were selected by the commander-in-chief. Caesar's tribuni were probably all chosen by himself. They were of knightly rank, and in their election family influence and personal friendship had more weight than military ability and experience. Of Caesar's tribuni C. Volusenus Quadratus is the only one who is mentioned with commendation. We read of them sometimes as the leaders of small detachments, sometimes as entrusted with administrative duties.

The *praefecti militum*, who before the Social War had held the same office among the Socii as the tribuni among the Romans, were now nominated by the commander-in-chief, and were deputed to command auxiliary troops and perform other services. Like the tribuni, they were of equestrian rank.

The sixty centurions of the legion were selected by the commander-in-chief. Originally their rank varied according as they belonged to the Triarii, Principes, or Hastati, and to the first or second century of the maniples. The old titles were retained in the cohort formation when the division into Hastati, Principes, and Triarii had practically disappeared. Each of the three lines of the legion had, according to p. xxiv., 10 maniples and 20 centuries, also 20 centurions, *i.e.* 10 *priores* and 10 *posteriores*. Thus

the last centurion in the legion was *decimus hastatus posterior*, and so on, *e.g.* :

60, 59 ...	... 51	decimus, nonus ...	... primus hastat. post.
50, 49 ...	... 41	decimus, nonus ...	... primus hastat. prior.
40, 39 ...	... 31	decimus, nonus ...	... primus princeps post.
30, 29 ...	... 21	decimus, nonus ...	... primus princ. prior.
20, 19 ...	... 11	decimus, nonus ...	... primus pilus post.
10, 9 ...	... 2	decimus, nonus ...	... secundus pilus prior.

The first centurion of the whole legion was called *primus pilus*, *primipilus*, or *primi pili centurio*, the *prior* being omitted. *Pilus* is substituted for *triarius*, and is occasionally used as equivalent to *ordo* in the case of *Triarii*, *e.g.* *primum pilum ducere*, B. G. v. 35. Centurions wore a distinguishing badge on their helmet, and carried a vine wand (*vitis*) as a staff of office.

Soldiers who had been discharged after serving their time might be again called to service by a special summons of the commander-in-chief. They were then named *evocati*. They were exempted from pioneer and sentinel duty, and were sometimes allowed to use horses on the march. They enjoyed the same rank and sometimes the same pay as centurions.

The *fabri* or engineers formed a separate corps, under the *praefectus fabrum*. The engines of war were entrusted to their charge.

Legionaries when sent out to pick up intelligence, if single, were termed *speculatores*; if in parties, *exploratores*.

The clothing of a Roman soldier was very simple. Instead of the cumbrous toga, he wore the *sagum* or

*sagulum*, a short cloak reaching only to the knee. It left the right side of the body open, and was fastened at the shoulder by a buckle. Under this was the *tunica*, which was kept in place by the *cingulum*, which sometimes supported the sword. The *caligae* were half-boots reaching to the middle of the leg. The soles were studded with great nails.

Light though this clothing was, the Roman soldier had always enough to carry. When on the march, he was little better than a beast of burden. He carried his armour and everything that he used. The weight of his pack alone (*sarcinae*) was sixty Roman *librae*, or about forty-five English pounds. It consisted of provisions for half a month, several stakes (*valli*), a saw, basket, spade, hatchet, and a vessel for cooking. These *vasa* and *cibaria* were generally carried on one of the *valli* over the left shoulder, while the left arm supported the shield. The right hand grasped the two *pila*, and the helmet hung on the breast or back. In the event of battle the *sarcinae* were thrown together and entrusted to the charge of a guard (*praesidium*). Without *sarcinae* the soldier is said to be *expeditus*; with them, *impeditus*. By *impedimenta*, on the other hand, was meant such baggage as tents, handmills, and military engines. The wagons and beasts of burden were included in the term. On the first signal for march the tents were struck and the baggage packed (*vasa conclamare, colligere*); on the second, everything was got ready; and on the third, the whole army was set in motion.

The standards of the legion were numerous. Originally each manipule had its own standard. In fact it was from

the wisp of hay which formed its first rude ensign that the *manipulus* was named. It was in Marius' time that the eagle (*aquila*) became the principal standard of the legion. The bird was represented with wings outspread, perched on a wooden pole. The centurions took care to select one of the strongest and bravest legionaries as standard-bearer (*aquilifer*). Over his helmet the head and skin of some wild beast was so worn that the face appeared between its jaws. He was attached to the first cohort, and was under the eye of the first centurion of the legion. Thus the eagle was always in the van. In the same way the standard of each sub-division of the legion was placed in front of that division, and by this fact many phrases are explained :—*Signa inferre* is to attack : *signa proferre*, *promovere*, to advance : *signa convertere*, to wheel : *signa referre*, to retreat : *signa conferre*, to engage or to concentrate : *signa convellere*, *efferre*, *tollere*, to break up : *a signis discedere*, to desert : *manipulos ad signa continere*, to keep the men together. In camp the eagle was placed beside the general's quarters in a little chapel which had the privileges of sanctuary ; and on the field it was defended with a devotion as loyal as that which an English regiment shows for its colours.

The *vexillum* differed from other signa in being more of a banner. It was a square piece of coloured cloth extended on a frame. The cavalry used it ; and legionaries when told off for some special duty were combined under a vexillum, the signa remaining with the legion. The signal for battle was given by hanging out a red banner (*vexillum*) from the general's quarters.

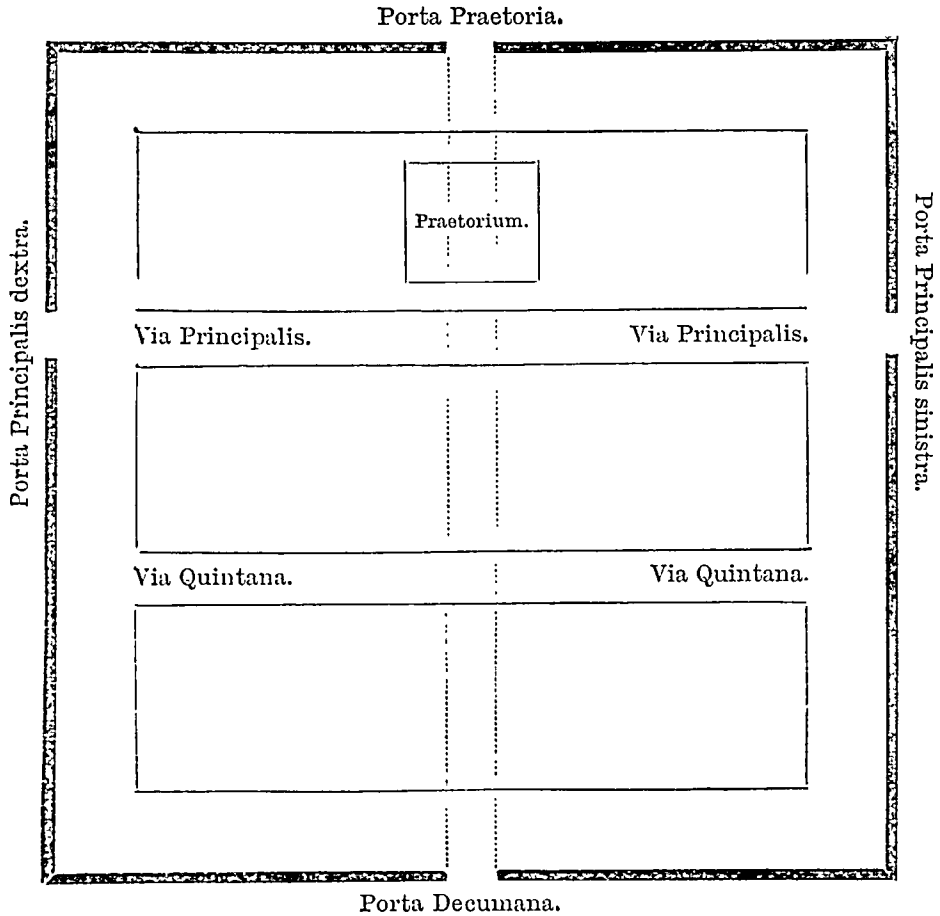
A Roman army never halted for the night without

entrenching itself. Towards the end of the day's march a detachment was sent on in front to select a spot for encampment. A favourite site was the slope of a hill, especially if wood, water, and grass were abundant in its neighbourhood. The lines were marked out with such accuracy that on the arrival of the troops not only might they begin the entrenchments without delay, but each man knew exactly where he was quartered for the night. The sketch on the next page will make the main lines of the camp easily intelligible.

The camp lay four square, and each side was pierced by a gateway. From the Porta Praetoria to the Porta Decumana there ran a road fifty feet broad, dividing the camp lengthwise into two equal parts. The gates on the right and left of the camp were joined by another and broader road, called Via Principalis, which divided the camp into two unequal parts, one-third and two-thirds respectively. The larger part was assigned to the legionaries, and was itself cut in two by the Via Quintana. The other contained the Praetorium or general's quarters, and the quarters of the legati, quaestores, and tribuni. The picked troops were also stationed here. As a rule this was the side nearest the enemy, the Porta Decumana being furthest removed and on the highest ground. Between the rampart and the tents a space of 200 feet was always left unoccupied (*intervallum*). By this means the enemy was prevented from firing the tents, and room was left for the deploying of the troops. The rampart was called *vallum* or *agger*, and was formed by the earth flung out of the trench (*fossa*). The stakes (*valli*) carried by the soldiers were used to form a sort of breastwork or



*chevaux de frise* on the top. The trench was ordinarily twelve feet broad by nine feet deep. The tents (*tentoria*) were made of skins—hence such phrases as *sub pellibus*



*esse, sub pellibus habere milites*—and held ten men, who formed a mess (*contubernium, contubernales*). In a winter camp the tents were replaced by neat huts (*hibernacula*),

thatched with straw (*casae stramentariae*). Great precautions were taken against a surprise. One or two cohorts were thrown forward in front of the gates *in statione*, and a turma of horse acted as patrols. The general name for pickets is *excubitores*; *vigiliae* are night-guards. The night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal spaces called *vigiliae*, and the outposts (*vigiliae*) were shifted at the end of each. *Vigiliae* were small outposts of four men or so, while *stationes* were whole detachments. *Custodiae* or *custodes* were sentinels intended to guard some particular point. The watchword or countersign (*tessera*) was passed round in writing.

We have seen that the *impedimenta* of a Roman army contained the elements of a siege train, but much was left to the ingenuity and labour of the soldiers. Occasionally a weakly-fortified town was taken by a *coup de main*. The trench was filled with earth (*agger*) and fascines (*crates*), the gates broken in, and the walls undermined. Strong positions, badly provisioned, were generally invested and reduced by hunger. Besides these two methods, there was the third of a regular siege, employed against well-provisioned and strongly-fortified towns. The *agger* formed a prominent feature in such a siege. This was a mound begun at some distance from the wall, and gradually pushed forward, rising in height all the time, so that when completed it might form an inclined plane to the top of the wall. Moveable towers (*turres ambulatoriae*) were rolled forward on its slope, and from them archers and javelin-throwers rained down missiles on the defenders. When it was found impossible to construct an *agger*, the ground

was simply levelled by shooting rubbish (*agger*) into the hollows, and the towers were moved forward over the prepared ground. The lower stories (*tabulata*) served to protect the men who worked the battering-rams, and the higher sheltered troops, while bridges (*sambucæ*) were thrown across to the wall. The defenders tried to destroy them by fire or by masses of wood or stone discharged from engines.

To protect the besiegers in their operations, several kinds of sheds were employed. Of these *plutei* were simply moveable coverts, behind which the soldiers crouched. The *vineæ*, *testudo*, and *musculus* were true sheds or mantlets, covered with raw hides, as a protection from fire, and pushed forward to shelter working parties. The ram (*aries*) was a strong beam from 60 to 180 feet long, ending in an iron head. It was suspended from a horizontal beam raised on two upright timbers, and was set in motion from behind.

We must not confuse *testudo*, a mantlet, with another use of the word, common enough in describing sieges. A scaling-party would protect itself in the advance over the open by forming a roof with shields. Each man held his shield firmly over his head, making it rise slightly towards the front. The front rank stood erect, and the rows behind stooped more and more till the last. As the shields were locked, the whole formed a compact covering like the shell of a tortoise.

Other contrivances were the *falces murales* or strong sickles affixed to long poles, and used to tear down stones and stockades; the *tolleno* or crane, by which men were lifted on to the walls; the *terebra* or borer,

used to bore into the walls; and *tormenta* or missile engines. *Tormenta* included engines for discharging darts (*catapultae*), and those which hurled masses of stone (*ballistae*).

The mine (*cuniculus*) also played an important part in sieges, the defenders undermining the *agger* by its means, and the besiegers using it to effect a breach in the walls.



CAESAR  
DE BELLO GALLICO  
LIBER PRIMUS.

---

1. GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum 1  
unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, Gaul is divided  
into three  
parts, viz.  
Belgium, Gaul 2  
tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra proper, and  
Aquitania.  
Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, in-  
stitutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos  
ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona  
et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt 3  
Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate  
provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos  
mercatores saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad  
effeminandos animos pertinent, important, proximi- 4  
que sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt,  
quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa  
Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt,  
quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis con-

tendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut  
 5 ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una  
 pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium  
 capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna  
 flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam  
 ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit  
 6 ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus  
 oriuntur: pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis  
 Rheni: spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem.  
 7 Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes  
 et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam,  
 pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septen-  
 triones.

#### HELVETIAN WAR. CHS. 2-29.

2 2. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et  
 ditissimus Orgetorix. Is M. Messala et  
 M. Pisone consulibus regni cupiditate  
 inductus coniurationem nobilitatis fecit  
 et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis  
 cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile  
 2 Orgetorix per-  
suades the  
Helvetii to  
conquer the  
whole of Gaul,  
but, aiming at  
royal power,  
escapes con-  
demnation  
only by intimid-  
ation and a  
convenient  
death. esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent,  
 3 totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc  
 facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci  
 natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine  
 Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium  
 a Germani dividit; altera ex parte monte Iura

altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ut 4 et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; qua ex parte homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro 5 multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se finis habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum ccxl., in latitudinem clxxx. patebant. 3. His rebus adducti 3 et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare, iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas 2 res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt: in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi 3 legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere 4 persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduo, 5 fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet eique filiam suam in



6 matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis probat  
 conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis  
 imperium obtenturus esset: non esse dubium, quin  
 7 totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis  
 copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum con-  
 8 firmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et  
 iusiurandum dant et regno occupato per tres po-  
 tentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae  
 sese potiri posse sperant. Ea res est Helvetiis per  
 4 indicium enuntiata. 4. Moribus suis Orgetorigem  
 ex vinclis causam dicere coegerunt; damnatum  
 2 poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die  
 constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium  
 omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem,  
 undique coegit et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos,  
 quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem con-  
 duxit; per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit.  
 3 Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis ius suum  
 exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex  
 agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est;  
 4 neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin  
 ipse sibi mortem consciverit.  
 5 5. Post eius mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id,  
 quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e  
 finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam se ad eam  
 rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua  
 omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad qua-  
 dringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, fru-

The Helvetii do  
 not abandon  
 2 their plan;  
 their prepara-  
 tions for the  
 exodus.

mentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi 3  
erant, comburunt, ut domum reditionis spe sublata  
paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent, trium  
mensum molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre  
iubent. Persuadent Rauricis et Tulingis et Latovicis 4  
finitimis, uti eodem usi consilio oppidis suis vicisque  
exustis una cum iis proficiscantur, Boiosque, qui  
trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum  
transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se  
socios sibi adsciscunt. 6. Erant omnino itinera duo, 6  
quibus itineribus domo exire possent: They propose  
marching  
through 'the  
Province.'  
unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile,  
inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum,  
vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissi-  
mus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent;  
alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque 2  
expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et  
Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit,  
isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. Extremum 3  
oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum  
finibus Genava. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios  
pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod  
nondum bono animo in populum Romanum vider-  
entur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos, ut per suos  
fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profec- 4  
tionem comparatis diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam  
Rhodani omnes conveniant. Is dies erat a. d. V.  
Kal. Apr. L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus.

- 7 7. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat  
 Caesar, then  
 at Rome,  
 objects  
 strongly, and  
 marches with  
 2 all speed to  
 Genava.  
 ab urbe proficisci et quam maximis potest  
 itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit  
 et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti  
 quam maximum potest militum numerum  
 imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una),  
 3 pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindi. Ubi  
 de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos  
 ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cuius legationis  
 Nammeius et Verucloetius principem locum obtine-  
 bant, qui dicerent, sibi esse in animo sine ullo male-  
 ficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud  
 iter haberent nullum: rogare, ut eius voluntate id  
 4 sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenebat,  
 L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque eius ab  
 Helvetiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concedendum  
 5 non putabat; neque homines inimico animo data  
 facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi tempera-  
 6 turos ab iniuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut  
 spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos impera-  
 verat, convenirent, legatis respondit, diem se ad  
 deliberandum sumpturum: si quid vellent, ad Id.  
 8 April. reverterentur. 8. Interea ea legione, quam  
 He builds a  
 fortification on  
 the south bank  
 of the Rhone;  
 the enemy are  
 unable to get  
 by.  
 secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex pro-  
 vincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui  
 in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem  
 Iuram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis

dividit, milia passuum decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto praesidia disponit, castella com-<sup>2</sup> munit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare et, si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii ea spe<sup>4</sup> deiecti navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam, interdium, saepius noctu, si perumpere possent, conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi hoc conatu destiterunt.

9. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua Sequanis invitis propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte per-<sup>9</sup> suadere non possent, legatos ad Dumno-<sup>2</sup> rigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. Dumnorix gratia et largi-<sup>3</sup> tione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat et quam plurimas civitates suo beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem<sup>4</sup> suscipit et a Sequanis impetrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent, perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant

Another pass through the Sequani, who allow the Helvetii to pass through their territory.

- Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et iniuria transeant.
- 10 Caesar, fearing for 'the Province,' raises forces and crosses the Rhone. 10. Caesari renuntiatur, Helvetiis esse in animo, per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt,
- 2 quae civitas est in provincia. Id si fieret, intellegebat magno cum periculo provinciae futurum, ut homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus
- 3 maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni, quam fecerat, T. Labienum legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit et, qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit.
- 4 Ibi Ceutrones et Graioceli et Caturiges locis superioribus occupatis itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsus ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit: inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos exercitum ducit. 11. Hi sunt extra provinciam
- The Aedui (into whose country the Helvetii had arrived), Aedui Ambarri, and Allobroges ask Caesar for aid; he determines on immediate action. trans Rhodanum primi. Helvetii iam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant et in Aeduum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem

mittunt rogatum auxilium : Ita se omni tempore de 3  
 populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu  
 exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servi-  
 tutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint.  
 Eodem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et con- 4  
 sanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiores faciunt,  
 sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim  
 hostium prohibere. Item Allobroges, qui trans 5  
 Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se  
 ad Caesarem recipiunt et demonstrant, sibi praeter  
 agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus 6  
 Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus  
 fōrtunis sociorum consumptis in Santones Helvetii  
 pervenirent.

12. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et 12  
 Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredi-  
 bili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem  
 fluat, iudicari non possit. Id Helvetii  
 ratibus ac lintribus iunctis transibant. Caesar over-  
 takes the Hel-  
 vetii as they  
 are crossing  
 the Arar  
 (Saône), and  
 annihilates  
 one division 2  
 of their army.  
 Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus  
 est, tres iam partes copiarum Helvetios id  
 flumen traduxisse, quartam fere partem citra flumen  
 Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus  
 tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit,  
 quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos 3  
 et inopinantes aggressus magnam partem eorum  
 concidit: reliqui sese fugae mandarunt atque in  
 proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur 4

- Tigurinus: nam omnis Helvetia in quattuor pagos  
 5 divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset  
 patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem  
 interfecerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat.  
 6 Ita sive casu sive consilio deorum immortalium,  
 quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem  
 populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas per-  
 7 solvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed  
 etiam privatas iniurias ultus est, quod eius soceri  
 L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini  
 eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.
- 13 13. Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum  
 The Helvetii in a high tone ask for peace. ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faci-  
 endum curat atque ita exercitum traducit.
- 2 Helvetii repentino eius adventu commoti, cum id,  
 quod ipsi diebus xx aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen  
 transirent, illum uno die fecisse intellegerent, legatos  
 ad eum mittunt; cuius legationis Divico princeps  
 3 fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is  
 ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romanus  
 cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque  
 ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset  
 4 atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseveraret,  
 reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani  
 5 et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise  
 unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii, qui flumen trans-  
 issent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam  
 rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos

despiceret. Se ita a patribus maioribusque suis 6  
didicisse, ut magis virtute contenderent, quam dolo  
aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut  
is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi  
Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut  
memoriam proderet. 14. His Caesar ita respondit: 14  
Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas  
res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, Caesar  
memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, demands  
quo minus merito populi Romani accid- hostages and  
issent: qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi con- satisfaction for  
scius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo de- injuries done  
ceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellexeret, to the allies.  
quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. The Helvetii  
Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num 2 refuse.  
etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eo invito iter per 3  
provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Aeduos, quod  
Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam 4  
deponere, posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter  
gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune tulisse  
iniurias admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuesse 5  
enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex com-  
mutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum  
ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diutur-  
niorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, 6  
tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae  
polliceantur, facturos intellegat, et si Aeduis de  
iniuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item



si Allobrogibus, satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse  
 7 facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a maioribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare consuerint: eius rei populum Romanum esse  
 15 testem. 15. Hoc responso dato discessit. Postero

The Helvetii gain the advantage in a slight cavalry fight. Caesar follows the enemy with caution.

die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor millium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant,  
 2 quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de  
 3 nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublatis Helvetiis, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius 'subsistere nonnunquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt.  
 4 Caesar suos a proelio continebat ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus popula-  
 5 tionibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinque aut sex  
 16 milibus passuum interesset. 16. Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice  
 2 polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo

autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus sub-  
 vexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant,  
 a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui: conferri, comportari, ad-  
 esse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit et diem instare, quo die frumentum mili-  
 tibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habe-  
 bat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui  
 creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potes-  
 tatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi  
 neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore,  
 tam propinquis hostibus ab iis non sublevetur;  
 praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus ad-  
 ductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius, quod  
 sit destitutus, queritur. 17. Tum demum Liscus  
 oratione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat,  
 proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud  
 plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint  
 quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba  
 oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum confe-  
 rant, quod debeant: praestare si iam principatum  
 Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Roman-  
 orum imperia perferre; neque dubitare, quin si  
 Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua  
 Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem

Dumnorix the  
 Aeduan pre-  
 vents the Aedui  
 from sending  
 the corn which  
 they had  
 promised to  
 Caesar. This is  
 told to Caesar  
 by Divitiacus  
 and Liscus.

nostra consilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus  
6 enuntiari : hos a se coërceri non posse. Quin etiam,  
quod necessariam rem coactus Caesari enuntiarit,  
intelligere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit; et ob  
18 eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse. 18. Caesar  
hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem,  
designari sentiebat, sed, quod pluribus praesentibus  
eas res iactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit,  
2 Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea, quae in con-  
3 ventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem  
secreto ab aliis quaerit; repperit esse vera: Ipsum  
esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud ple-  
bem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum  
novarum. Compluris annos portoria reliquaque  
omnia Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta  
habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat  
4 nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse  
et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse;  
5 magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper  
6 alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi, sed  
etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque  
huius potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini  
illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse, ipsum ex  
7 Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et pro-  
pinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse.  
8 Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem,  
odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod  
eorum adventu potentia eius deminuta et Divitiacus

frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in 9 spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare. Reperiebat etiam in 10 quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum a Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam equitatu, quem auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum. 19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has 19 suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo iniussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitatem animadvertere iuberet. His 2 omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, iustitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne eius supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur. Itaque 3 prius, quam quicquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari iubet et cotidianis interpretibus remotis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul commone- 4

facit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de  
 Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separatim  
 5 quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur,  
 ut sine eius offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cog-  
 20 nita statuatur, vel civitatem statuere iubeat. 20. Di-  
 vitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem com-  
 plexus obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius.  
 2 in fratrem statueret: Scire se illa esse  
 vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se  
 doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse  
 gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille  
 minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per se  
 3 crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad  
 minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam  
 uteretur. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existima-  
 4 tione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare  
 gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae  
 apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua  
 voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius  
 5 Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec cum pluribus  
 verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram  
 prendit; consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti  
 eius apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et rei publicae  
 iniuriam et suum dolorem eius voluntati ac precibus  
 6 condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem ad-  
 hibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse  
 intellegat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet,  
 ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet:

Divitiacus  
 intercedes  
 for his brother  
 2 with Caesar,  
 who merely  
 warns  
 Dumnorix.

praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dum-  
norigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum  
loquatur, scire possit.

21. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus 21  
hostes sub monte consedissee milia passuum  
ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura  
montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus,  
qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum  
est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum

Caesar resolves  
to attack the  
enemy both in  
front and rear,  
but is balked  
by a false  
alarm. 2

Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus  
legionibus et iis ducibus qui iter cognoverant, sum-  
mum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui  
consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem 3  
itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit equita-  
tumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui 4  
rei militaris peritissimus habebatur et in exercitu  
L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum ex-  
ploratoribus praemittitur. 22. Prima luce, cum 22  
summus mons a Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium  
castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus  
abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut 2  
ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Con-  
sidius equo admisso ad eum accurrit, dicit montem,  
quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus  
teneri: id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus  
cognovisse. Cæsar suas copias in proximum collem  
subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei prae-  
ceptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi

3 ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut  
 undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte  
 occupato nostros exspectabat proelioque abstinebat.  
 4 Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit  
 et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse  
 et Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset,  
 5 pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die quo consuerat  
 intervallo hostes sequitur et milia passuum tria ab  
 eorum castris castra ponit.

- 23 23. Postridie eius diei, quod omnino biduum  
 supererat, cum exercitui frumentum  
 Caesar  
 marches to  
 Bibracte,  
 followed by  
 the Helvetii.  
 metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte,  
 oppido Aeduorum, longe maximo et  
 copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum  
 xviii aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existi-  
 mavit: iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire  
 2 contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii, de-  
 curionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur.  
 3 Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos  
 discedere a se existimarent, eo magis, quod pridie  
 superioribus locis occupatis proelium non com-  
 misissent, sive eo, quod re frumentaria intercludi  
 posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere  
 converso nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac  
 lacessere coeperunt. 24. Postquam id  
 24  
 Caesar defeats  
 the Helvetii in  
 a great battle  
 near Bibracte;  
 they flee to  
 the Lingones.  
 animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in  
 proximum collem subducit equitatum-  
 que, qui sustineret hostium impetum,

misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem 2  
instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum [ita uti  
supra]; sed in summo iugo duas legiones, quas in 3  
Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat, et omnia  
auxilia collocari ac totum montem hominibus com-  
pleri et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri  
et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant,  
muniri iussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris 4  
secuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi 5  
confertissima acie reiecto nostro equitatu phalange  
facta sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

25. Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex con- 25  
spectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo  
spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium com-  
misit. Milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile 2  
hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disiecta gladiis  
dstrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad 3  
pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum  
scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, cum  
ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra  
impedita satis commode pugnare poterant, multi 4  
ut diu iactato brachio praeoptarent scutum manu  
emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneri- 5  
bus defessi et pedem referre et, quod mons suberat  
circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt.  
Capto monte et succedentibus nostris Boii et Tulingi, 6  
qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium  
claudebant et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere



nostros latere aperto aggressi circumvenire et id  
conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant,  
rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt.  
7 Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima  
et secunda acies, ut victis ac submotis resisteret,  
26 tertia, ut venientes sustineret. 26. Ita ancipiti  
proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius  
cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri  
se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad  
2 impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam  
hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum  
pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit.  
3 Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum  
est, propterea quod pro vallo carros obiecerant et e  
loco superiore in nostros venientes tela coniciebant,  
et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas  
4 subiciebant, nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset  
pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt.  
5 Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est.  
Ex eo proelio circiter milia hominum cxxx super-  
fuerunt eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt: nullam  
partem noctis itinere intermisso in fines Lingonum  
die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera  
militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri  
6 triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar  
ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos  
frumento neve alia re iuvarent: qui si iuvisent, se  
eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse triduo

intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.  
27. Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos 27  
de deditioe ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in 2  
itinere convenissent seque ad pedes The Helvetii  
surrender and  
are sent away  
home.  
proiecissent suppliciterque locuti flentes  
pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco,  
quo tum essent, suum adventum exspectare iussisset,  
paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, 3  
arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Dum 4  
ea conquiruntur et conferuntur nocte intermissa,  
circiter hominum milia sex eius pagi, qui Vergibenus  
appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis traditis  
supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod  
in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut  
occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent,  
prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum  
finesque Germanorum contenderunt. 28. Quod 28  
ubi Caesar rescit, quorum per fines ierant, his,  
uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse  
vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero  
habuit; reliquos omnes obsidibus, armis, perfugis 2  
traditis in deditioem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, 3  
Latovicos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti  
iussit et, quod omnibus frugibus amissis domi nihil  
erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit,  
ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicos-  
que, quos incenderant, restituere iussit. Id ea 4  
maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde

- Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi
- 5 Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem iuris libertatisque condicionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.
- 29 29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>Documents<br/>giving<br/>statistics as<br/>to the<br/>number of<br/>the Helvetii.</p> | <p>litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item</p> |
|--|--|
- 2 separatim pueri, senes mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum milia cclxiii, Tulingorum milia xxxvi, Latovicorum xiv, Rauricorum xxiii, Boiorum xxxii; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia xcii. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia
- 3 cclxviii. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

## GERMAN WAR. CH. 30 TO END.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae 30  
 legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem  
 gratulatum convenerunt: Intellegere sese, Congratula-  
tions pour in  
upon Caesar. 2  
 tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis  
 populi Romani ab his poenas bello repe-  
 tisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae  
 Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse, propterea 3  
 quod eo consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas  
 Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent  
 imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna  
 copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissi-  
 mum ac fructuosissimum iudicassent, reliquasque  
 civitates stipendiarias haberent. Petierunt, ut sibi 4  
 concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere  
 idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere  
 quasdam res, quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere  
 vellent. Ea re permissa diem concilio constituerunt 5  
 et iureiurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus com-  
 muni consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

31. Eo concilio dimisso idem principes civitatum, 31  
 qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem reverterunt  
 petieruntque, uti sibi secreto de sua  
 omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Divitiacus  
begs Caesar to  
aid the Gauls  
against the  
tyrannic  
Ariovistus. 2  
 Ea re impetrata sese omnes flentes  
 Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt: Non minus se id

contendere et laborare, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Locutus est pro his  
3 Divitiacus Aeduus : Galliae totius factiones esse duas :  
harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius  
4 Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se  
multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab  
Arvernīs Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesse-  
5 rentur. Horum primo circiter milia xv Rhenum  
transisse : posteaquam agros et cultum et copias  
Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, tra-  
ductos plures : nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et xx  
6 milium numerum. Cum his Aeduos eorumque  
clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse ;  
magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobili-  
tatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse.  
7 Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua  
virtute et populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia  
plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse  
Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis et iure-  
iurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides  
repetituros neque auxilium a populo Romano im-  
ploraturos neque recusaturos, quo minus perpetuo  
8 sub illorum ditione atque imperio essent. Unum  
se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum, qui adduci non  
potuerit, ut iuraret aut liberos suos obsides daret.  
9 Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad

senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque iureiurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed <sup>10</sup> peius victoribus Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidis-  
disse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupa-  
visset et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere iuberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum milia hominum xxiv ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse <sup>11</sup> paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent; neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gal- <sup>12</sup> lorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cuiusque liberos poscere et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem eius facta sit. — Hominem <sup>13</sup> esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium; non posse eius imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi si quid in <sup>14</sup> Caesare populoque Romano sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant fortunamque, quaecumque accadat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ario- <sup>15</sup> visto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus

- qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat.
- 16 Caesarem vel auctoritate sua atque exercitus vel  
recenti victoria vel nomine populi Romani deterrere  
posse, ne maior multitudo Germanorum Rhenum  
traducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniuria
- 32 posse defendere. 32. Hac oratione ab Divitiaco  
habita omnes, qui aderant, magno fletu auxilium a
- 2 <sup>The bearing of  
the Sequani.</sup> Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertit  
earum rerum facere, quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes  
capite demisso terram intueri. Eius rei quae causa
- 3 esset, miratus ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sequani res-  
pondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere.  
Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino  
vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus
- 4 respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem et graviolem fortu-  
nam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in  
occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare  
auderent absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si
- 5 coram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis  
tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui  
intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum  
oppida omnia in potestate eius essent, omnes  
cruciatus essent perferendi.
- 33 33. His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos  
Caesar promises  
to interfere. verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi  
eam rem curae futuram: magnam se  
habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adduc-

tum Ariovistum finem iniuriis facturum. Hac oratione habita concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea 2 multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret, imprimis quod Aeduos fratres consanguineosque saepenumero a senatu appellatos in servitute atque in ditione videbat Germanorum teneri eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos 3 consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire populo Romano periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros 4 temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sequanos a provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret; quibus rebus quam maturrime occurrendum putabat. Ipse autem 5 Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur. 34. Quam- 34 obrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio deligeret: velle sese de re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum

Caesar  
summons  
Ariovistus to  
a conference;  
Ariovistus  
scornfully  
refusing,  
receives an  
ultimatum.



fuisse ; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negotii esset.

35 35. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit : Quoniam tanto suo populiue Romani beneficio affectus, cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi populoque Romano gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse, quae ab eo postularet : primum ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret : deinde obsides, quos haberet ab Aeduis, redderet Sequanisque permetteret, ut, quos illi haberent, voluntate eius reddere illis liceret ; neve Aeduos iniuria lacesseret, neve his sociisque eorum bellum inferret. Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram : si non impetraret, sese, quoniam M. Messala, M. Pisone consulibus senatus censisset, uti, quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo rei publicae facere posset, Aeduos ceterosque amicos populi Romani defenderet, se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum. 36. Ad haec

Ariovistus respondit : Ius esse belli, ut, qui vicissent, iis, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperarent: item populum Romanum <sup>Ariovistus replies defiantly.</sup> victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuesse. Si ipse 2 populo Romano non praescriberet, quemadmodum suo iure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romano in suo iure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli 3 fortunam temptassent et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem 4 iniuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis se obsides redditurum non 5 esse, neque iis neque eorum sociis iniuria bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id non fecissent, longe iis fraternum nomen populi Romani afuturum. Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret, se Aeduo- 6 rum iniurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congregaretur: 7 intellecturum, quid invicti Germani, exercitatisimi in armis, qui inter annos xiv tectum non subissent, virtute possent.

37. Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata refere- 37 bantur, et legati ab Aeduis et a Treveris veniebant: Aedui questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper <sup>Caesar occupies 2 Vesontio.</sup> in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur: sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Treveri autem, pagos 3

centum Sueborum ad ripas Rheni consedis-  
Rhenum transire conarentur; his praeesse Nasuam  
4 et Cimberium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar vehe-  
menter commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si  
nova manus Sueborum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti  
5 sese coniunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque  
re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit comparata  
38 magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. 38.  
Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei,  
Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum  
Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequa-  
norum, contendere, triduique viam a suis finibus  
2 profecisse. Id ne accideret, magnopere sibi prae-  
3 cavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium  
rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in  
4 eo oppido facultas, idque natura loci sic muniebatur,  
ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem,  
propterea quod flumen Dubis ut circino circumduc-  
5 tum paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium,  
quod est non amplius pedum mille sexcentorum, qua  
flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine,  
6 ita, ut radices montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis  
contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit  
7 et cum oppido coniungit. Huc Caesar magnis noc-  
turnis diurnisque itineribus contendit occupatoque  
39 oppido ibi praesidium collocat. 39. Dum paucos  
dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque  
causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibus-

que Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant (saepenumero sese cum his congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum dicebant ferre potuisse), tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alius alia causa illata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petebat, ut eius voluntate discedere liceret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant; abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserebantur. Volgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque quique equitatui praeerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum, quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Caesari nuntiarant, cum castra

Dread of the  
Germans in  
the minds of  
the soldiers.

moveri ac signa ferri iussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa laturos.

40 40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus vehementer eos incusavit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi 2 quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio 3 discessurum iudicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitae suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspecta eum neque suam neque populi Romani 4 gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia 5 desperarent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum Cimbris et Teutonis a Gaio Mario pulsus non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur; factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quae a nobis acceperant sublevarent.

6 Ex quo iudicari posse quantum haberet in se boni constantia, propterea quod, quos aliquamdiu inermes sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores 7 superassent. Denique hos esse eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerint.

Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum com- 8  
moveret, hos, si quaerent, reperire posse diuturni-  
tate belli defatigatis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multos  
menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset neque sui  
potestatem fecisset, desperantes iam de pugna et  
dispersos subito adortum magis ratione et consilio  
quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines 9  
barbaros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum  
quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui 10  
suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem an-  
gustiasque itineris conferrent, facere arroganter, cum  
aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere  
viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae: frumentum Se- 11  
quanos, Leucos, Lingones subministrare, iamque esse  
in agris frumenta matura: de itinere ipsos brevi  
tempore iudicatu-ros. Quod non fore dicto audientes 12  
neque signa latu-ri dicantur, nihil se ea re commo-  
veri: scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto au-  
diens non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse  
aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse con-  
victam: suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem 13  
Helvetiorum bello esse perspectam. Itaque se, quod 14  
in longiorem diem collaturus fuisset, repraesenta-  
tuum et proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra  
motuum, ut quam primum intellegere posset, utrum  
apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor valeret.  
Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur tamen se cum sola 15  
decima legione ituum, de qua non dubitaret, sibique

- eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem  
 41 confidebat maxime. 41. Hac oratione habita mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est,  
 2 princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam con-  
 3 firmavit. Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus egerunt, uti Caesari satisfacerent; se nec umquam dubitasse neque timuisse neque de summa belli suum iudicium,  
 4 sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. Eorum satisfactione accepta et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut dixerat, profectus est.  
 5 Septimo die, cum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et xx abesse.
- 42 42. Cognito Caesaris adventu Ariovistus legatos  
 ad eum mittit: quod antea de colloquio  
 A conference. postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine periculo facere  
 2 posse existimare. Non respuit condicionem Caesar iamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ultro polliceretur,  
 3 magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populi-

que Romani in eum beneficiis cognitis suis postulatis fore, uti pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus 4 est ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe ultro citroque cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur: uterque cum equitatu veniret; alia ratione sese non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque col- 5 loquium interposita causa tolli volebat neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatu committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis eo legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. Quod cum fieret, non irridicule quidam ex militibus 6 decimae legionis dixit: plus quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum se in cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum, ad equum rescribere. 43. Planicies erat magna et in ea tumultus 43 terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eo, ut erat dictum ad colloquium venerunt. Legionem Caesar, 2 quam equis vexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo 3 constiterunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. Ubi eo ventum <sup>The demands of Caesar.</sup> 4 est, Caesar initio orationis, sua senatusque in eum



beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset  
 a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissime  
 missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et pro magnis  
 5 hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat; illum,  
 cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iustam  
 haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac senatus ea  
 6 praemia consecutum. Docebat etiam, quam veteres  
 quamque iustae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum  
 7 Aeduis intercederent, quae senatusconsulta quotiens  
 quamque honorifica in eos facta essent, ut omni  
 tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent,  
 prius etiam, quam nostram amicitiam appetissent.  
 8 Populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios  
 atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed  
 gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse: quod  
 vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id iis  
 9 eripi quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem,  
 quae legatis in mandatis dederat, ne aut Aeduis aut  
 eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides redderet; si  
 nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset,  
 at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.  
 44 44. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit,  
 2 de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhe-  
 num sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et  
 The answer of  
 Ariovistus. arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe  
 magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse:  
 sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides  
 ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere iure

belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non 3  
sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse; omnes  
Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac contra  
se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio  
pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velint, 4  
se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace uti velint,  
iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua volun-  
tate ad id tempus pependerit. Amicitiam populi 5  
Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detri-  
mento esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si  
per populum Romanum stipendium remittatur et  
dediticii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese  
recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam, quam appe-  
tierit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Gal- 6  
liam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae  
impugnandae causa facere: eius rei testimonium esse,  
quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non  
intulerit, sed defenderit. Se prius in Galliam venisse 7  
quam populum Romanum. Nunquam ante hoc  
tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae  
finibus egressum. Quid sibi vellet? cur in suas 8  
possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse  
Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non  
oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic  
item nos esse iniquos, quod in suo iure se inter-  
pellaremus. Quod fratres Aeduos appellatos diceret, 9  
non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse  
rerum, ut non sciret, neque bello Allobrogum proximo

Aeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse neque ipsos in his  
contentionibus, quas Aedui secum et cum Sequanis  
10 habuissent, auxilio populi Romani usos esse. Debere  
se suspicari simulata Caesarem amicitia, quod exer-  
citurum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causa habere.  
11 Qui nisi decedat atque exercitum deducat ex his  
regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed hoste habi-  
12 turum. Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese no-  
bilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse  
facturum: id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios comper-  
tum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amici-  
13 tiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si disces-  
sisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset,  
magno se illum praemio remuneraturum et quae-  
cumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo eius labore et  
45 periculo confecturum. 45. Multa ab Caesare in eam  
Caesar begins  
to reply. sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio de-  
sistere non posset; neque suam neque  
populi Romani consuetudinem pati, uti optime  
merentes socios desereret, neque se iudicare, Galliam  
2 potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello  
superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio  
Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset neque  
in provinciam rede-gisset neque stipendium impo-  
suisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus  
spectari oporteret, populi Romani iustissimum esse  
in Gallia imperium; si iudicium senatus observari  
oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello

victam suis legibus uti voluisset. 46. Dum haec in 46 colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiātum est, equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit seque ad suos recepit suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsus hostibus dici posset eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in volgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros eius equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset, multo maior alacritas studiumque pugnandi maius exercitui in- iectum est.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos 47 mittit: Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret aut, si id minus vellet, e suis [legatis] aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie eius diei Germani retineri non potuerant, quin in nostros tela conicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris obiecturum existimabat. Commodis-

German  
treachery  
balked by  
Caesar's  
foresight. 2

A second  
conference:  
Ariovistus  
seizes Caesar's  
two envoys,  
Procillus and  
Metius. 2

simum visum est Gaium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adulescentem, cuius pater a Gaio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, qua multa iam Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et M. 5 Metium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad 6 se referrent. Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente conclamavit: quid ad se venirent? an speculandi causa? Con- 48 antes dicere prohibuit et in catenas coniecit. 48.

Ariovistus  
draws nearer:  
cavalry  
encounter. Eodem die castra promovit et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte 2 consedit. Postridie eius diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit et milibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Aeduis supporta- 3 retur, Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus 4 proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, 5 equestri proelio cotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae

salutis causa delegerant: cum his in proeliis versabantur. Ad eos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid 6 erat durius, concurrebant, si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circumsistebant; si quo erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut iubis equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent. 49. Ubi eum castris 49 se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, Skirmishing for several days. quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab iis, castris idoneum locum delegit, acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. Primam 2 et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, 3 uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo secius Caesar, ut ante consti- 4 tuerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Munitis castris duas ibi legiones 5 reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra maiora reduxit. 50. Proximo die instituto 50 suo Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit paulumque a maioribus castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne 2 tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppug-

naret, misit. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum  
3 pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus  
multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus in castra  
4 reduxit. Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quam  
ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc repe-  
riebat causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo  
esset, ut matresfamiliae eorum sortibus et vaticina-  
tionibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex  
5 usu esset, necne; eas ita dicere: non esse fas Ger-  
manos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio con-  
51 tendissent. 51. Postridie eius diei Caesar praesidium  
Ariovistus's forces, com-  
pelled to fight,  
are routed,  
and pursued  
to the Rhine. utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est,  
reliquit, omnes alarios in conspectu hos-  
tium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod  
minus multitudine militum legionariorum  
pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis  
uteretur; ipse triplici instructa acie usque ad castra  
2 hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani  
suas copias castris eduxerunt generatimque consti-  
tuerunt paribus intervallis, Harudes, Marcomanos,  
Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suebos,  
omnemque aciem suam redis et carris circumdede-  
3 runt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres  
imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes passis  
manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem  
52 Romanis traderent. 52. Caesar singulis legionibus  
singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes  
2 suae quisque virtutis haberet; ipse a dextro cornu,

quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter 3 in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes coniciendi non daretur. Reiectis pilis cominus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter ex consuetudine sua phalange facta impetus gladiatorum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui 5 in phalangas insilirent et scuta manibus revellerent [et desuper vulnerarent]. Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant. Id cum animadvertisset 7 Publius Crassus adolescens, qui equitatu praecerat, quod expeditior erat quam ii, qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit. 53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes 53 hostes terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi tranare contenderunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem reppererunt; in his fuit Ariovistus, qui 3 naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit; reliquos omnes equitatu consecuti nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba 4 natione, quam domo secum duxerat, altera Norica, regis Voccionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat, a fratre missam: utraque in ea fuga periit. Fuerunt



duae filiae: harum altera occisa, altera capta est. Gaius Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fuga

<sup>5</sup> Recovery, and tale, of Procillus and <sup>6</sup> Metius. trinis catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostis equitatu persequentem incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium sibi restitutum videbat, neque eius calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna

<sup>7</sup> deminuerat. Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum

<sup>54</sup> reductus est. 54. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiatio Suebi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti magnum ex iis numerum occiderunt. Caesar una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis

<sup>3</sup> Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

<sup>2</sup> Arrangements for the winter.

# NOTES.

R.L.P. = Revised Latin Primer.

## PAGE 1.

CHAP. I. § 1. Gallia corresponded generally with modern France, but extended to the Rhine.

omnis, 'as a whole,' a meaning given to the word by its position. Contrast 12. 4: *omnis civitas Helvetia divisa est.*

Belgae, of Gallic stock mainly, and Caesar's most formidable enemies in Gaul.

aliam = *alteram*, a fairly common usage after Livy. Cic. *Brut.* 95: *genera Asiaticae dictionis duo sunt: unum ... aliud. nostrā linguā.*

Galli = the Celtic Gauls. Caesar uses the term *Gallia* in its restricted sense of 'Celtic Gaul,' § 6; 30. 1; 30. 3.

§ 3. *cultu atque humanitate*, 'civilization and refinement;' the second more significant word qualifying the less precise one.

*provincia*, now Provence, probably made 'the Province' about B.C. 120.

*minime*, with *saepe*.

*mercatores*, from *Massilia* (Marseilles), a flourishing commercial centre, of Greek origin.

*commeant*: words of motion compounded with *cum* often contain an idea of 'hither and thither.'

*ad effeminandos animos pertinent*, 'tend to enervate the courage.'

§ 4. *incolunt*, 'dwell,' 5. 4; 54. 1.

*qui ... quibuscum*: not connected by a conjunction, because not coordinative; *qui trans Rhenum incolunt* is an adjective clause = *Transrhenanis*.

## PAGE 2.

§ 4. *finibus*, abl. of the place from which.

*cum*, '(then namely) when they are either keeping them off from their own territories, or are themselves waging war in the territories of their enemies;' lit. 'of them.' [*cum* = 'since' governs a subjunctive.]

§ 5. *Eorum*, 'of those peoples' mentioned above.

*ab Sequanis*: cp. 23. 3, *a novissimo agmine*; also *a tergo*, 'in the rear,' *a latere*, 'in flank,' like our 'off' a place.

§ 6. *oriri*: seldom used of place, usually metaphorically.

§ 7. *spectat inter o.*: *i.e.* 'has a north-westerly aspect.' Caesar regards the whole country from the standpoint of 'the Province.'

CHAP. 2. § 1. *M. Messala, M. Piso*, consuls A.U. 693, B.C. 61, *i.e.* when Caesar was *quaestor* in Spain. [The conj. *et* is rare in this phrase: cp. 6. 4; 35. 4.]

*inductus*, 'persuaded.'

*de* does (*ex* would not) imply that they went not to return.

*ut exirent*, 'to go forth'; plural, *civitas* being a collective noun. The clause is in oblique petition: cp. L. Primer, N. S. x. 1. (2). [*qui videant*, 15. 1, which Kraner compares, is not parallel, being an adverbial clause expressing purpose.]

*cum omnibus copiis*: *i.e.* with all their belongings.

§ 2. *esse*, '(he said) that it was easy, since,' etc.

*praestarent*, in past time, because presented from the point of view not of the speaker (*Orgetorix*), but of the writer (*Caesar*).

§ 3. *hoc*, 'so much,' abl. of measure with a comparative.

*continentur*, 'are confined' (contrast l. 5) 'on all sides by the character of the country.'

*unā ex parte*: *i.e.* roughly speaking, the North.

*flumine Rheno qui*. In Caesar the relative usually agrees with the appellative, not with the proper name; so l. 1, *flumen Arar quod*.

#### PAGE 3.

§ 3. *tertiā ex parte*.

§ 4. *quā ex parte*, 'in which respect'; cp. the metaphorical sense of *ex omni parte*, 'in every respect.'

§ 5. *pro*, 'considering'; 5l. 1, *pro hostium numero*.

*angustos*, 'too narrow': cp. *longum est*; Thuc. i. 50, ὀλίγοι ἀμύνειν, 'too few to aid.'

*qui patebant*, 'now these did but extend'; a parenthetic remark of Caesar, as is shown by the mood: if it had been a continuation of the thoughts of the Helvetii, it would have been *paterent*. ["The Helvetii were old enemies; on them, too, the tide of migration from the North had pressed continuously. They had hitherto defended themselves successfully, but they were growing weary of these constant efforts. Their numbers were increasing, and their narrow valleys were too strait for them. They also had heard of fertile, scantily-peopled lands in other parts, of which they could possess themselves by force or treaty, and they had already shown signs of weariness." (Froude, *Caesar*, p. 201.)]

CHAP. 3. § 1. *pertinerent*: subj. because in reported speech. *comparare, coëmere, facere, confirmare*. The Latin idiom gives each word a copula, or none: cp. l. 2, *lingua, institutis, legibus*.

§ 2. *in tertium annum*, 'for the third year'; the acc. denoting that to which the mind is directed.

*lege*, 'by special enactment.' The promptitude and forethought, rare among uncivilized peoples, seem to show the presence of a master mind.

§ 4. *regnum*, 'chieftaincy,' not implying in Gaul what it would at Rome. It was distinguished from *principatus*, as

being a power actually conferred by the tribe, and not the result merely of wealth, birth, etc., as in the case of Dumnorix: cp. 16. 5; 17. 1; 19. 3; 30. 1.

obtinerat. Beware (even in § 6; 18. 9) of translating this verb by 'obtain' (*consequor*): 'in which sense no good writer ever used it,' says Madvig, on *Cic. de finibus*, ii. 71.

amicus. A title granted to foreign princes (to reward services done, or to secure a wavering ally, cp. 35. 2) by the senate: hence the expression here used *senatu populi Romani*, instead of the usual *senatu populoque Romano* (S.P.Q.R.)

§ 5. *acceptus* is here an adjective.

ut ... *conaretur*, *persuadet*. The historical imperfect subjunctive follows the historic present.

#### PAGE 4.

§ 6. *Perfacile factu*. The supine is superfluous in English. *esset*, 'he was,' as he said: hence the subjunctive.

*totius Galliae*: i.e. *totius G. populorum*.

§ 7. *copiis* includes the ideas of 'means' and 'power': cp. 2. 1.

§ 8. The sentence is compressed, not to say careless; *adducti* applies only to Casticus and Dumnorix, whereas *inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant* includes Orgetorix also.

*regno occupato* is equivalent to a conditional clause, = *si regnum occupatum esset*.

*firmus*, of physical strength, as *Cic. firma manus*.

*potiri*: here alone in Caesar with a genitive, but this is the usual construction in Cicero for acquiring political power.

*posse*, having no future infinitive, stands in the present after verbs of promising and hoping.

CHAP. 4. § 1. *Moribus suis*: cp. *meā sententiā*, 'in my opinion'; *eā lege*, 'on those terms.'

*ex vinclis*, 'in chains'; cp. 43. 3, *ex equo colloqui*.

*damnatum*, conditional; 'it behoved that the punishment of being burnt should befall him if condemned.' *poenam* is

the subject, *Orgetorigem damnatum* the object, of *sequi*; *ut igni cremaretur*, a clause explaining *poenam*. [Cp. 53. 7, for another example of this mode of punishment.]

§ 2. *familiam* = *famulos*, 'household.'

*ad*, 'to the number of'; cp. 5. 2; 29. 2; Xen. *An.* i. i. 10, *εἰς διαχίλλους*.

*clientes obaeratique*. The two classes are almost identical. Caesar uses a Roman word not in its usual sense, but as expressing more nearly than any other the state of things in a foreign country: cp. *regnum*, 3. 4, note.

*ne causam diceret*, 'to avoid pleading his cause': *ne* final [not consecutive, which would be *ut non*]: cp. Cic. pro Sest. 8. 18, *ab eis se ereptum ne de ambitu causam diceret prae-dicabat*.

§ 3. *Cum conaretur*. Note the tense; it was while these measures were being carried out that O. committed suicide.

*armis*, abl. of instr. with *exsequi*.

§ 4. *quin* follows verbs of hindering and doubting, when these are negative or interrogative. R.L.P. 422. Cic. pro Flacc. 27. 54, *quis ignorat quin tria genera sint?*

CHAP. 5. § 1. *ut exeant*, 'namely, to go forth,' a clause explaining *facere*; so the inf. is used 7. 1, *cum id nuntiatum esset, eos conari*: cp. 2. 1; cp. 13. 2, *ut flumen transirent*.

§ 2. *Ubi iam*: in B.C. 58, three years after the scheme was first set on foot.

*reliqua privata aedificia*: i.e. *reliqua aedificia quae privata erant*.

#### PAGE 5.

§ 3. *praeterquam*, 'except,' occurs once again in Caesar, vii. 77. 6.

*domum reditio*: The verbal substantive acts as if it were itself a verb; so Cic. *domum itio*, and *obtemperatio legibus*.

*mensum*, older form (and the usual one in Cicero, Livy, and Ovid) for *mensium*, the original stem being probably

*mens.* For the case, cp. *dierum xxii frumentum*, in Caesar ; *cibaria eius diei*, in Livy.

*domo* : R.L.P. 274.

§ 4. *cum iis* would according to rule be *secum*, as referring to the subject of the principal verb, *persuadent* : the usage is not infrequent in Caesar.

CHAP. 6. § 1. *itineria d., q. itineribus*. Note the lawyer-like fulness of the phrase, common in Caesar and in Cicero's speeches : § 4, *diem qua die* ; 40. 1, *consilio ... ad id consilium*.

*possent* : subjunctive because *quibus* = 'of such a nature that.'

*vix qua*. For the somewhat inverted order, cp. 25. 4, *multi ut praeoptarent* ; 43. 3, *Ariovistus ex equis ut colloquerentur ... postulavit*. The object here is to lay emphasis on *vix*.

§ 2. *nuper* : two years before, B.C. 60, by the Praetor C. Pomptinus.

*vado transitur*, 'can be forded,' but this is expressed more directly by saying that 'it is forded.' So Cicero, *non diiudicatur amor verus et fictus*. *vado*, instrumental abl., qualifying *transitur* as an adverb, and is therefore in this usage always singular.

§ 3. *viderentur*. Supply *esse* ; subjunctive because in *oratio obliqua*.

*bono animo*, 'well disposed.' R.L.P. 234.

*eos* : cp. 5. 4, *cum iis*, note. *suos* refers to the subject of the subordinate clause, *ut ... paterentur*.

*coacturos*. Supply *eos* from *Allobrogibus*.

§ 4. *convenient* would be imperative in direct speech.

*qua die ... is dies*. *Dies* is as a rule feminine of a *date*, masculine of a natural day. See Mr. Rutherford's *Caesar*, II. 6, note.

a. d. V. Kal. Apr., *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles* = March 28, B.C. 58. Caesar clearly regards the day as a kind of landmark by this precise marking, so rare in his writings. For the want of connecting particles, cp. note on 2. 1.

CHAP. 7. § 1. Caesar had just given up his consulship and was still in Rome.

eos ... conari, a clause explaining *id*; cp. 5. 13, note.

ab urbe, 'from Rome'; see Introduction, p. xviii.

Gallia ulterior: *i.e.* on the further (as *G. Cisalpina* was on the Roman) side of the Alps. [According to Plutarch, he reached the Rhone in eight days.]

ad, 'in the neighbourhood of,' not 'to,' which would be simple acc.

§ 2. provinciae toti (dative), only referring to *Gallia ulterior*.

legio una, the tenth. The asyndeton is meant to indicate the haste with which Caesar issued the orders: 20. 6; 22. 3.

§ 3. qui dicerent, 'to say'; but 9. 2, *mittunt ut impetrarent*.

~~nullum~~, emphatically placed last; cp. 18. 3, *audeat nemo*.

rogare, 'that they begged'; supply *se*. The accusatives *me*, *te*, *se* (rarely *nos*, *vos*), *eum*, *eos*, as subj. of an inf., are often omitted.

voluntate: cp. 30. 4; 35. 4.

§ 4. Livy, iii. 28, *tribus hastis iugum fit, humi fixis duabus, superque eas transversa una deligata*.

§ 5. temperaturos: 'would abstain'; Verg. *Aen.* ii. 8, *quis ... temperet a lacrimis?* compare the construction, 33. 4.

§ 6. imperaverat: indicative for same reason as *patebant*, 2. 5.

quos, the nearer object of *imperaverat*, as *numerus*, § 2; and so acc.

diem, 'a certain time'; 40. 14, *in longiorem diem collaturus fuisset*.

ad Id. April, 'by the 13th of April'; cp. vi. 33, *ad eundem diem revertantur*. [*ad* is often translated 'about,' but it is impossible that Caesar of all men should have made such a loose allusion.]



CHAP. 8. § 1. *legione*. The abl. instr. is often used of troops, corresponding to the Greek 'military dative'; 15. 3, *novissimo agmine*; 53. 3, *equitatu*.

*qui in flumen R. influit*: so, strangely enough, vii. 57. 4. Caesar talks of 'a marsh which flowed (?drained) into the Seine.'

## PAGE 7.

§ 1. *decem novem*, usually *undeviginti*. [Caesar's fortification consisted of a line of forts (connected by a trench and wall where necessary) on the south bank of the Rhone. Even Roman soldiers could not have dug a *continuous* trench of the dimensions mentioned and nineteen miles long in so short a time. At parts the natural banks of the Rhone formed a sufficient defence; at all events, no traces of any such continuous work have been found.]

§ 2. *conarentur* would be *conabuntur* of *oratio recta*.

§ 3. *reverterunt* acts as the perfect of deponent *revertor*.

*ulli*: rarely substantival. R.L.P. 323.

§ 4. 'The Helvetii foiled of that hope, (some) having joined together ships and made several rafts, others at the fords of the Rhone, where was the least depth of water,—having attempted to break through, if they could, (at last) driven away by the strength of the works and the onset of the soldiers and their missiles, gave up this attempt.' To complete the symmetry of the sentence, another *alii* must be added before *navibus*. Originally Caesar meant to mention only the boats, the fording of the river coming in as an afterthought.

*erat*: cp. 2. 4, *patebant*, note.

*munitione*, of natural strength artificially increased; cp. 38. 4, *muniebatur*.

CHAP. 9. § 1. *una*, 'only one,' emphatic. [This pass is now the Pas de l'Écluse.]

*Sequanis invitis*, 'if the S. should be unwilling'; cp. *regno occupato*, 3. 8, note.

§ 2. *sua sponte*, 'by their own resources'; at v. 28 = 'on their own responsibility.'

ut eo deprecatore, 'that with him as their advocate they might gain their end'; the object of *impetrarent* must be supplied from the context. R.L.P. 237.

§ 3. *gratia*, 'popularity.'

*novae res*, 'revolution'; cp. *novae tabulae*, 'cancelling of debts, and Greek *νέωτεπίσειν*. [For dat., cp. Roby and Wilkins, § 143.]

§ 4. *ne prohibeant, ut transeant*: final clauses expressing the purpose of the exchange of hostages.

#### PAGE 8.

CHAP. 10. § 1. *Santonum* = *Santonorum*; cp. 11. 16, *Santonos*. Caesar, in talking of the *Teutoni* and *Santoni*, uses the older and shorter form of the plural gen.

*non longe*, forty miles. There is no reason to think that the distance is understated.

*absunt, est*: cp. *patebant*, 2. 5, note.

§ 3. *Italiam*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

*magnis itineribus*, 'by forced marches.'

*duas legiones*: viz. the 11th and 12th; he already had the 10th.

*tres quae circum A. hiemabant*: viz. the 7th, 8th, and 9th.

*circum Aquileiam*. Winter-quarters were around and not in a town; cp. Xen. *An.* i. 2. 5, *Kûpos ὠρμάτο ἀπὸ (not ἐκ) Σάρδεων*.

§ 4. The exact route taken by Caesar is doubtful. According to Napoleon, it was Turin, valley of the Chiasone, Usseau, Col de Mont Genève, Briançon, Grenoble, across the Isère to Lyon. In later times there was a more direct route over Mont Cenis.

§ 5. *Compluribus h. p. p.*, 'these having been defeated in several engagements.' *his pulsus*, abl. abs.; *compluribus proeliis*, Lat. Primer, § 113. A similar coming together of

distinct ablatives occurs iii. 6. 3, *copiis fusis armisque exutis*, 'the forces being routed and stripped of their arms.'

ab Ocelo. The preposition is expressed because the departure is 'from the neighbourhood of Ocelum'; so vii. 59, *Caesar a Gergovia discessisse audiebatur*.

ulterior provincia, usually called simply 'the Province,' distinguished from *citerior provincia*, i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

CHAP. 11. § 1. per angustias: 6. 1; 9. 1.

#### PAGE 9.

§ 3. The Aedui also seem to have traced their descent from Trojan blood: B.C. 121, they were styled 'allies of the Roman people': cp. 31. 7, and especially 33. 2, *fratres consanguineosque*; Tac. *Ann.* 11. 25, *solī Gallorum fraternitatis nomen cum populo Romano usurpant*.

nostri: cp. 44. 8, note.

liberi eorum. Caesar here leaves the standpoint of the subject (viz. the envoys of the Aedui), and speaks from his own; hence not *sui*.

§ 4. *depopulatis*, 'having been laid waste,' must be regarded as from the deponent *depopulo*, not *depopulo*, which does not occur in classical prose. Many deponents have a perfect participle with a passive meaning; so *comitor*, 'I accompany,' but *comitatus*, 'being accompanied.' See the list in Roby, *Lat. Gr.*, Book II., ch. xxix.

§ 5. *nihil reliqui*, 'nothing left.'

§ 6. *dum*, 'until,' takes the subjunctive, because the arrival of the Helvetii was still contingent; R.L.P. 431, 432.

CHAP. 12. § 1. *Flumen est Arar*. Caesar often introduces thus a transition of subject; e.g. 43. 1, *planities erat magna*.

*quod*: cp. note on *flumine Rheno, qui*, 2. 3.

*transibant*, 'were in the act of crossing'; note the tense. Napoleon I. thought this was at Châlons; Napoleon III., with Von Kampen and Göler, at Trévoux; Desjardins, at Mâcon.

§ 2. *de tertia vigilia*, 'in the course of the third watch'; *i.e.* from midnight to 3 A.M.

*e castris*, between the Rhone and Saône, not far from Lyon.

§ 3. *Eos ... eorum*. For a similar redundancy, cp. 54. 1, quos *Ubi*, *insecuti magnum ex eis numerum occiderunt*.

*impeditos*, not only encumbered with their baggage, but also occupied in the crossing.

§ 4. *pagus*, the canton including its inhabitants: 13. 5; 37. 3.

#### PAGE 10.

§ 5. *L. Cassium*, 7. 4; 13. 2.

*memoria*, 'in the memory': *i.e.* in the time.

*sub iugum*, acc., because motion is implied, 7. 4.

§ 6. The order is, *ea pars civitatis Helvetiae quae ... princeps poenas persolvit*: *pars* is drawn into the relative clause.

§ 7. *eius, Caesaris*. Caesar had married Piso's daughter Calpurnia a year before. Plutarch wrongly attributes this defeat of the Tigurini not to Caesar, but to his lieutenant Labienus.

CHAP. 13. § 1. *Hoc proelio facto*, 'after this battle.'

*in Arare*, 'on the Arar.'

§ 2. *ut flumen transirent*, in apposition with and explanatory of *quod*: cp. 5. 1, *ut e finibus suis exeant*.

*bello Cassiano*, fifty years before: for a similar way of expressing 'time when,' cp. *proelio*, 12. 7; *tumultu*, 40. 5; *occasu*, 50. This ablative is generally found with either an adjective in attribution or a genitive: Roby, Lat. Gr. § 1180.

§ 3. *constituisset* = *constitueris* (fut. perf.), of direct speech.

§ 4. *perseveraret, Caesar*.

*incommodi*, 'disaster.' It will be seen that this is an euphemism, since it refers to the same event as *insignem calamitatem*, 12. 6.

§ 5. *Quod adortus esset*, 'with regard to his having attacked.'

suae refers to Caesar, the subject of the verb *tribueret*; ipsos to the Helvetii.

*tribueret*= 'give weight,' is used absolutely : so *ita didicisse*, § 6; *ita respondit*, 14. 1, etc.

## PAGE 11.

§ 6. *Se ita*, 'this they had learnt from their fathers and ancestors, rather to contend with valour than to rely upon fraud or ambuscades. Let him not therefore cause the place where they had taken their stand to win an evil name, or hand down a record of disaster from a defeat of the Roman people and the annihilation of their army.'

*committere ut*, 46. 3.

CHAP. 14. § 1. *His, legatis*; 34. 2, *ei legationi respondit*: [not neut., which would be *ad haec*, 36. 1.]

*Eo*: cp. 2. 3, *hoc*, note.

*gravius ferre*, with no object. The subject *se* has to be supplied.

*quo minus merito populi R. accidissent*, 'because they had not been deserved by the Roman people.' Livy, *nullo meo in se merito*.

§ 2. *qui*, 'now if this,' viz. the Roman people.

*fuisse*=*fuit* of *or. recta*; 'it would not have been difficult,' *deceptum*: supply *esse*.

*quare*, 33. 2.

§ 3. *Eo invito*: cp. 6. 3; 11. 3.

*num posse*=*num possum* of *oratio recta*: the omission of *se* in such cases is not uncommon: cp. 7. 3, note. The infinitive is used when the question in direct speech is of the 1st or 3rd person, the subjunctive when it is of the 2nd.

*Allobrogas*. The Greek acc. is usual in the case of foreign names: cp. *Lingonas* (26. 6), *Atrebatas*, etc.

§ 4. *se, Helvetios*. The sense is, 'the fact of their so insolently exulting in their victory, and of their wonder at having

so long (fifty years) gone unpunished for their wrong-doings, pointed in the same direction<sup>1</sup>; this direction being the coming vengeance.

§ 5. *doleant, velint*: present, because a general maxim.

§ 6. *sint, dentur*. Note the interposition of primary tenses. *ipsis, Aeduis*.

#### PAGE 12.

CHAP. 15. § 1. *ad numerum*: cp. 4. 2, note.

*coactum hab.*, stronger than *coegerat*.

*qui videant*: 2. 1, note; plural, as *equitatus* is collective.

§ 2. *cupidius*, 'too eagerly.'

*alienus*, 'unfavourable'; *suus*, 'favourable.'

*et pauci*, 'and in consequence some few,' the rest fled (18. 10): *modo (tantum)* never qualifies *pauci* thus used.

§ 3. *sublati*, 'elated.'

*et* joins *subsistere* and *laccessere*. It is never used by Caesar in the sense of 'also,' 'even.'

*novissimo agmine*: cp. *legione*, 8. 1, note.

§ 4. *in praesentia*, 'for the present'; either acc. plur. of *praesens*, or, which is less likely, abl. sing. of *praesentia*.

§ 5. *iter fecerunt*, 'marched.'

*uti*, final ('in order that') rather than consecutive ('so that'): *ita* is not antecedent.

*quinis, senis*. The distributive numerals are used to show that this was the interval kept *each day*: *amplius* rarely affects the case: cp. 23. 1, *non amplius milium*: so also *plus* and *minus*. R.L.P. 314. Here, however, the ablatives *quinis aut senis milibus* would but for *amplius* be nominatives.

CHAP. 16. § 1. *essent*: subjunctive, as part of Caesar's command.

*flagitare*, 'kept asking,' historical infinitive. [Note the double acc., R.L.P. 208.]

§ 2. *quod G.*, 'Gaul lying'; a parenthetical clause.

frigora, frumenta : note the plural, 40. 11. [Observe that it was now well on in the month of June.]

## PAGE 13.

§ 3. averterant iter, into the Loire valley.

§ 4. in Diem ex die ducere tempus (or *Caesarem*) : diem is, as Kraner points out, an adverbial accusative and not the object of *ducere* : cp. Livy, xxv. 25. 4, cum is diem de die differret = 'as he kept delaying from day to day.'

conferri, 'contributed' by individuals.

comportari, 'brought' to Caesar.

adesse, 'was close at hand.'

§ 5. diutius, 'over long' : cp. cupidius, 15. 2.

diem, quo die : cp. 6. 1, note.

metiri is probably passive, as Caesar does not omit the object after active infinitives with *oportet*. The monthly allowance to each foot-soldier was 4 bushels of corn ; to the equites, 12 of corn and 42 of barley.

Divitiaco et Lisco, ablatives in apposition with *principibus*.

magistratui, abstract.

annuus, adverbial.

§ 6. cum, 'at a time when.'

tam nec. tempore, 'at so urgent a crisis.'

multo etiam gr., 'complains too the more seriously of being thus deserted' (on this account).

CHAP. 17. § 1. quod, acc. of reference, used as if it were the object of *tacuerat*. So *aliquid* and other neuter pronouns are constructed with *silere*, *nescire*.

§ 2. privatim = *privati*.

conferant, plural, *multitudo* being a collective noun.

debeant : supply *conferre*.

§ 3. iam ... non, 'no longer.'

§ 4. dubitare : supply *se*.

superaverint, perf. conj. = fut. perf. ind.

sint erepturi = *eripient* of *oratio recta*.

cum reliqua G. Aed.: *i.e. et reliquae Galliae et Aeduis*.

#### PAGE 14.

§ 5. quaeque, 'and especially,' etc.

§ 6. quod ... enuntiarit, 'as to his having divulged so pressing a matter to Caesar,' a clause in apposition to *id*.

CHAP. 18. § 1. pluribus praesentibus, 'in the presence of too many.'

iactari, 'bandied about.'

§ 2. ex solo, 'from him in private.'

Dicit, Liscus.

§ 3. secreto, 'apart' (from Liscus).

Ipsium, implying that Caesar had thought as much.

summa audacia, 'a man of the greatest audacity'; abl. of quality. The omission of some such word as *vir* is remarkable.

portoria, a narrower word than *vectigalia*.

redempta habere, 'held in contract,' stronger than *redemisse* would have been. [At Rome *societates* of *publicani* contracted to farm the taxes for a certain amount, subletting particular districts to various individuals, these underlings being the 'publicans' of the New Testament.]

illo licente, 'when he was a bidder,' from *licet*: note the emphatic position of the contrasted words *illo ... nemo*.

§ 4. facultates, 'means.'

§ 6. domi, 'in his own state,' locative.

largiter posse. *Posse* being absolutely used = *potentem esse* can be qualified by an adverb: cp. 17, 1, *plus posse*: *large* is the more regular form.

collocasse in matrimonium, or nuptum.

§ 7. ex matre, 'on his mother's side.'



§ 8. *cupere alicui* = 'wish one well,' *alicui* being remoter object and the nearer object not expressed.

*suo nomine*, 'on his own account,' a commercial metaphor.

PAGE 15.

§ 8. *gratiae*, 'influence.' The genitive is definitive; that is to say, expresses the position or condition, which was 'influence and honour.' So *urbs Romae*, *fons Bandusiae*.

§ 9. *Si quid accidat Romanis*, 'if anything should happen to the R.' This softening down is called euphemism: familiar instances are the change of Cape of Storms to Cape of Good Hope, of the Pontos Axeinos ('inhospitable') to the Pontos Euxeinos ('hospitable.')

*imperio*, 'under the rule.' Beware of translating *imperium* as 'empire,' a meaning which it did not acquire until very late times. The ablative is a variety of the abl. of the 'time when.' R.L.P. 276.

§ 10. *in quaerendo*, 'in the course of inquiry' = *cum quaereret*.

*quod*, relative, agreeing with *proelium*: the antecedent is omitted and *proelium* drawn into the relative clause. The full construction is *in eo proelio equestri adverso, quod factum esset*.

*proelium equestre*, forming virtually a single word, can be qualified by a second epithet *adversum*.

*paucis diebus*, abl. of the measure of time. R.L.P. 280.

*ante*, adverb.

CHAP. 19. § 1. *res*, 'facts.'

*quod*, 'namely that.' The repetition of *quod* is styled 'anaphora.'

*traduxisset*, and the following verbs, are in the subjunctive because they entered into Caesar's calculations.

*iniussu suo et c.*, 'without his (Caesar's) orders and those of the State.' For the combination of a possessive pronoun and genitive, cp. Ov. (Her. 5. 45) *et flecti et nostros vidisti flentis ocellos*.

ipsis, *se et civitate* : *i.e. civibus*.

magistratu, viz. Liscus the *vergobretus*.

§ 2. *Divitiaci animum* = *Divitiacum* : cp. § 5, *eius offensione animi*.

§ 3. *cotidianis*, 'every day,' 'usual.'

#### PAGE 16.

§ 4. *ipso*, *Divitiaco*.

§ 5. *eius*, *Divitiaci*.

*ipse*, Caesar ; 'either that he should himself be allowed to try the case and decide or bid the State do so.'

CHAP. 20. § 1. *multis cum lacrimis*. This is the usual word order : cp., e.g., 10. 2, *magno cum periculo*.

*gravius* = *gravius iusto*.

*Scire se*, *dixit*.

*illa* : note the way in which the Latin utilizes its neuter : here translate, 'those charges.'

*domi* : cp. 18. 6.

*per se*, *i.e. Divitiacum*.

*crevisset*, with *propterea quod*, 'because he (Dumnorix) had grown powerful at a time when he (Divitiacus) had been having very little power'; *posset* = past perfect and progressive.

§ 3. *opes ac nervi*, almost synonymous, and joined to show the extent of the resources of Dumnorix.

*non solum sed* : note that *etiam*, which usually follows *sed* in this connection, would not be here quite in place.

§ 4. a *Caesare*, 'if any severe treatment should have been inflicted on him by Caesar' : for the euphemism, cp. 18. 9, note. *Accido* is regarded as a passive verb.

*ipse*, *Divitiacus*.

*apud eum*, *Caesarem*.

*futurum uti*, 'the result would be that.'

§ 5. *rogat faciat*, 'begs him to make.' Lat. Primer, § 154.

*tanti esse*, 'is of such weight'; probably originally a locative, but afterwards regarded by the Romans themselves as a genitive. R.L.P. 257.

*eius voluntati*, 'in consideration of his good will': dat. after *condonet*.

§ 6. *intellegat = sciat*.

#### PAGE 17.

§ 6. *praeterita*, 'the past': cp. note on *illa*, § 2.

*Divitiaco fratri*, 'to oblige his brother D.': cp. *eius voluntati*, § 5.

CHAP. 21. § 1. *monte*, Mount Taufrin.

*ipsius, Caesaris*.

*qualis, qui, misit*: note the inverted clause order.

*in circuitu*, 'in its circuit'; i.e. on its opposite side, as Caesar wished to attack the enemy also in the rear by sending men to ascend the heights from behind.

§ 2. *ducibus*, 'as guides.'

*sui consilii*, partitive genitive. R.L.P. 259.

§ 4. *rei militaris*, a genitive of relation after words which signify *skill*, etc. R.L.P. 262.

*in M. Crassi exercitu*. [The sequel shows that Considius mistook Labienus and his men for Gauls.]

CHAP. 22. § 1. *ipse*, 'while he.' Caesar's rapid and vigorous style omits unnecessary words.

§ 2. *equo admisso*, 'at the gallop.'

*voluerit, Caesar*; representing *voluisti* of *oratio recta*.

*a*, 'by means of'; a rare use of this preposition.

*insignibus*, 'accoutrements.'

*nisi*: could *si non* be substituted?

## PAGE 18.

§ 3. *ipsius, Caesaris.*

§ 4. *Multo die*, 'late in the day': cp. 26. 3, *ad multam noctem*. *Multus* (sing.) = 'many a,' is poetical.

§ 5. *quo consuerat intervallo*, 'at his wonted distance,' of five or six Roman miles: cp. 15 (end).

*milia passuum*. In such statements of distance Caesar generally uses the acc. if a verb be also expressed, except *intervallo* and *spatio*, which are always in the ablative: cp. 43, 1.

CHAP. 23. § 1. *biduum supererat cum*, 'only two days were wanting to the time when,' etc.

*metiri*, probably passive: cp. 16. 5.

*milibus passuum xviii.*: the genitive depends upon *spatio* understood; so *bidui abesse*.

§ 2. *fugitivi*, 'runaway slaves'; *perfugae*, 'deserters.'

§ 3. *existimarent, confiderent*: should be indicative after *quod* = 'because,' but are attracted by the surrounding *oratio obliqua* into the subjunctive.

*eo quod*, 'because.'

*intercludi posse, Romanos*.

*novissimo agmine*, 'our rear.'

CHAP. 24. § 1. *id*, object after *animum advertit* = *animadvertit*. Only the neuter pronoun may be so used.

*animum adverto* is the usual form of the word in Plautus, Terence, and Sallust; elsewhere contracted for the most part to *animadverto*.

Caesar being the subject both of the principal and subordinate clause is in a rather unusual place, not first in the sentence. The usual order is seen 11. 2: *Aedui, cum ... non possent, legatos mittunt*.

*collem*, nearly W. of Bibracte.

subducit, historic present, representing a protracted operation: misit, perfect, an instantaneous action; [or it may perhaps be that *misit* is attracted into the perfect by *sustineret* in the subordinate clause.]

## PAGE 19.

§ 2. *collis medius*, 'the hill half-way up.'

[*ita uti supra fecerat*; but the clause is not genuine.]

§ 3. *summo iugo*: *i.e.* the table-land at the top.

*proxime*, 'very recently.'

*totum montem*, from half-way up to the top.

*his*, 'these' already mentioned two legions; so not *eis*.

§ 5. *ipsi*, opposed to the *impedimenta*.

*confertissima acie*, abl. of instrument.

*reieto equitatu phalange facta*. The two ablatives absolute are not coordinated by any conjunction, because one is really subordinate to the other: upon the repulse of the horse the phalanx was formed. [The *phalanx* of the Helvetii resembled more or less the *συνασπισμός* of the Greeks; the shields locked together formed a complete covering to the advancing line.]

CHAP. 25. § 1. Cp. Plutarch, Caesar, 18: "When a horse was brought to him, he said, 'After victory I will use this for the pursuit, but now let us advance against the enemy'; and he attacked the enemy, charging on foot." Catilina, the Roman traitor, adopted the same desperate manœuvre.

*suo, equo*.

*omnium*, 'all his staff'; not of course alluding to his cavalry.

§ 3. *Gallis*: *i.e.* *Helvetiis*.

*magno impedimento*, predicative dative.

*cum ferrum se inflexisset*, 'seeing that the iron-head had got bent,' and was therefore more difficult to pull out. This head was itself about four and a half feet long, and its weight would easily carry it through several of the light shields carried by the Helvetii.

§ 4. *multi ut*, 'so that many.' For the inverted order of words cp. 6. 1, *vix qua*; 43. 3, *ex equis ut colloquerentur*; 26. 1. *diutius cum*.

*nudus*, i.e. without the shield: so *nudum latus*.

§ 5. *mille*, acc. of space, representing a noun, and so taking the genitive *passuum*, a very rare construction.

*circiter* is an adverb.

§ 6. *monte*, the Montagne du Château de la Garde.

*milibus*, abl. of instrument.

*ex itinere*, 'straight from their march'; cp. Bryans' 'Latin Prose based upon Caesar,' p. 48.

#### PAGE 20.

§ 6. *latere aperto*: the shields being carried on the left arm, this would be the right.

*circumvenire*, with *coeperunt*.

§ 7. *conversa signa bipartito intulerunt*, 'wheeled round and charged in two divisions'; i.e. with two fronts.

*victis ac submotis, Helvetiis*.

*venientes, Boios et Tulingos*.

CHAP. 26. § 1. *Ita*, 'thus'; i.e. as was said in c. 25.

*ancipiti proelio*, a 'twofold encounter,' i.e. both in front and rear.

*diutius*: for emphasis put first, cp. *multi ut*, 25. 4 (note).

*alteri, Helvetii*; *alteri, Boii et Tulingi*.

§ 2. *Nam* ('I say *se contulerunt*, not *fugerunt*), *for* in all this battle no one saw an enemy's back.'

*hoc toto proelio*, like the Greek genitive of time, indicates a space of time as between two extremes = 'in the course of,' and is quite distinct from the acc. of time how long.

*cum*, 'although,' 'whereas.'

*hora septima*. The day from sunrise to sunset was divided into twelve hours. Hence a day in winter was equal to about

forty-five of our minutes, in summer to about seventy-five. The seventh hour always began at mid-day.

§ 3. *et e loco superiore*, 'and from this vantage ground, formed by the waggons, etc.

§ 5. *captus est* agrees with the nearer subject, *unus e filiis*, though it applies also to *filia* in sense. R.L.P. 199. 1.

*eaque, milia.*

*nullam partem*, acc. of time how long.

*die quarto*, according to inclusive Roman reckoning; really in three days.

§ 6. *Lingonas*: cp. note on 14. 3, *Allobrogas*.

*qui si iuissent*, 'should they have aided them.' [Madvig condemns *si* as an unnecessary intrusion.]

*eodem loco*, 'in the same light.'

*Helvetios haberet, se esse habiturum.*

#### PAGE 21.

CHAP. 27. § 2. *Qui*, the ambassadors.

*eos, paruerunt*, refers to the main body of the Helvetii.

*convenio*. Many intransitive verbs become transitive when compounded with a preposition: so, *eo*, 'I go'; *adeo*, 'I approach.' Many of them, when thus used, can be personally constructed in the passive, *convenio* among the number: Cic. ad Fam. vi. 19. 2, *tantis pedum doloribus afficitur ut se conveniri nolit*. Contrast the construction at 8. 1; 30. 1.

*flentes*, with *petissent*.

*iussisset, Caesar*: a sudden change of subject, as at *dicit*, 18. 2.

§ 3. *fugio* = 'run away.' *perfugio*, 'run away to a distinctly named place.'

§ 4. *conquiruntur, obsides et servi.*

*conferuntur, arma.*

*salutis*: i.e. *libertatis*.

*finisque*: *que* explanatory = 'the Rhine, this being the German frontier.'

CHAP. 28. § 1. rescit : cp. *re-nuntiatur*, 10. 1.

quorum ... his ... imperavit : note the peculiar clause order.

sibi purgati, 'cleared of blame in his eyes' ; *dativus ethicus*, R.L.P. 223.

in hostium numero habere : a characteristic Roman expression, which means that they were indiscriminately slaughtered.

PAGE 22.

§ 5. Bolos, with *collocarent*.

petentibus Aeduis, abl. abs.

egregia virtute, abl. of quality.

erant, *Boii*.

concessit, 'he granted their request.'

quibus, 'to them therefore.'

postea. This seems to be a touch of revision added after the end of the Gallic War, as not until Bk. vii. had been written did this equalization take place. Note atque following *par*.

CHAP. 29. § 1. litteris Graecis, 'in Greek characters.' *Massilia* (Marseilles) was a Greek colony : no Gallic alphabet is known.

et joins *repertae sunt* to *relatae*.

quibus in tabulis, 'now in these lists.'

qui numerus = *quot*.

mulieresque : in such enumerations *et* must be used with each substantive or none ; but *que* often couples the last two.

§ 2. rerum : note that the word includes *men*.

capita Helvetiorum = *Helvetii*, a common periphrasis.

fuerunt, attracted in number by *milia*.

ad, 'to the number of,' 'about' ; Gk. *eis*.

PAGE 23.

CHAP. 30. § 1. Galliae, in the restricted sense of *Celtic Gaul* : cp. 1. 1 ; 30. 3, 4 ; 31. 3.



§ 2. Intellegere sese, *dixerunt*.

*tametsi* : usually in Caesar (as here) followed by *tamen*.

*Helvetiorum ... Romani*, 'the evils inflicted by the Helvetii upon the Roman people'; *Helvetiorum*, subjective; *populi Romani*, objective genitive (R.L.P. 261).

*ex usu*, 'to the advantage': cp. such phrases as *ex merito*, *e re*, *ex iniuria*, *ex integro*, *ex contrario*.

*terra Gallia*, 'the land of Gaul,' is more usual in Latin idiom than the definitive genitive: cp. *flumen Rhenus*, *mons Iura*; also *mare Oceanus*, *terra Italia*. [Note here that the Gallic land is opposed to the Roman people, not without significance.]

§ 3. *imperio*, over Gaul.

*copia locorum*.

§ 4. *sese habere dixerunt*; note the change from *petitio* to *nuntiatio obliqua*.

§ 5. *concilio*, 'for the council.'

*iureiurando inter se s.* 'bound themselves by oath.'

CHAP. 31. § 1. *Eo concilio dimisso*. Caesar with characteristic brevity informs the reader of the conference only by saying that it was broken up.

*idem = iidem*, a form not found in MSS. *qui ante fuerant, cum Caesare*.

*sibi* refers to the subject of *petierunt*.

*secreto*, apart from all except Caesar.

#### PAGE 24.

§ 2. *ne ... enuntiarentur*: a clause in apposition with *id*, and with it the object after *contendere et laborare*.

*quae dixissent*, 'what they should say.'

§ 3. *Galliae*, Celtic Gaul.

§ 4. *factum esse uti*, 'the result was that.'

§ 5. *copias*, 'wealth.'

*feri ac barbari*, 'wild and uncivilized'; the two practically synonymous words are used to put the case strongly, as *dicione atque imperio*, § 7.

§ 6. *clientes*: viz. the Segusiavi, Aulerci, and Aedui Ambari. Between the larger and some of the smaller states there was a bond in virtue of which these latter enjoyed protection, and in return supplied men and paid tribute.

*senatum*: cp. note on 3. 4, *regnum*.

§ 7. *hospitium publicum* was different both from *amicitia* and the formal *foedus*, being a mutual agreement entered into by two free states. The members of either could claim an honourable welcome, entertainment, and certain privileges besides in the other city.

*nobilissimos*, subst.

*sese*, *Aeduos*.

*dicione atque imperio*: see note on *feri ac barbari*, § 5.

§ 8. *se*, *Divitiacum*.

§ 9. *ob eam rem*, but *quam ob rem*: so *ob eam causam*, but *quam ob causam*.

#### PAGE 24.

*obsidibus*, abl. of the instrument: it was not the hostages so much as the *fact* of their being hostages which held his hands.

§ 10. *de altera parte-tertia*, 'from the second third'; *pars-tertia* forming one word, as *proelium equestre*, 18. 10.

*Harudum* = *ex Harudibus*.

§ 11. *paucis annis*, 'in a few years'; R.L.P. 277.

*omnes*, *Galli*; cp. 33. 3.

*neque ... neque* do not answer each other; *neque enim*, 'for not.'

*conferendum esse*: i.e. it was so much better.

*Gallicum*, *agrum*.

*hanc*, *Gallorum*.

*illa*, *Germanorum*.

§ 12. *ut vicerit*: the subj. is due to the *oratio obliqua*, not to the *ut*, as also *facta sit* below.

(a) *imperare*; (b) *poscere et edere*: join the verbs in this manner.

*exempla cruciatusque*, 'modes of punishment and torture': the phrase is nearly equivalent to a hendiadys, the *-que* being explanatory rather than coordinative.

*edere*: cp. *caedem, stragem, facinus edere*.

*si non*: the emphasis is strongly on the *non*; hence *nisi* could not be substituted.

§ 13. *Hominem*: contemptuous.

*non posse se*.

*imperia*: note the number.

§ 14. *Nisi si*, 'except if'; i.e. 'unless.'

*ut domo emigrent*: a clause in apposition to (*id*) *quod*; cp. 5. 1, *ut exeat* (note).

§ 15. *dubitare se*.

*enuntiata sint* = *erunt* of *oratio recta*.

#### PAGE 26.

§ 15. *sumat*: we might have expected *sumpturus sit*.

§ 16. *ne*: we might have had *quominus*.

*Rhenum* governed by the *trans* of *traducatur*; contrast 35. 3, *trans Rhenum traduceret*. [The young student will find it most instructive to go over this chapter with a careful eye for the tenses and moods; and to turn Caesar's indirect narration into direct.]

CHAP. 32. § 1. *magno fletu* = *multis cum lacrimis*.

§ 2. *nihil earum rerum*: i.e. neither entreated nor wept.

*capite demisso*, abl. of manner, which requires *cum* or an adjective.

§ 3. *neque posset*, 'and was unable.'

§ 4. *Hoc*, ablative of measure of difference with comparatives: 2. 3 (note). R.L.P. 244.

*quam reliquorum fortunam*, which can be inserted or omitted at will.

§ 5. *horreo* in classical Latin governs an acc.; in Caesar here only.

tamen, 'at any rate,' referring to a suppressed clause, ('although they might suffer from A.'s tyranny), yet.'

CHAP. 33. § 1. beneficio suo : cp. 35. 2 ; 40, 42, 43.

PAGE 27.

§ 2. secundum, 'next to these considerations,' i.e. those brought forward by Divitiacus : *secundum* is really a participle of *sequor*.

fratres consanguineosque : cp. 31. 7.

quod, 'now this.'

in tanto imperio, 'considering the universal sway.'

§ 4. feri ac barbari : cp. 31. 5 (note).

temperare and *temperare sibi* are equally found ; cp. 7. 5.

Cimbri, after menacing Rome for several years, were utterly defeated by C. Marius, B.C. 101 ; Teutoni, the previous year.

Rhodanus : i.e. *only* the Rhone.

§ 5. ferendus non videretur : Latin prefers personal constructions when possible.

CHAP. 34. § 1. placuit ei = *statuit, censuit* ; cp. 35. 4.

medium utriusque, 'equidistant from both' ; *utriusque*, gen. of reference.

summis utriusque rebus, 'matters of the highest importance to both.'

§ 2. venturum fuisse, velit, oportere = *venissem, vis, oportet*, of *oratio recta*. Caesar often varies his tenses to produce a lively effect or clearness.

Si quid opus esset, 'if he had need of anything from Caesar' ; *quid* is nom. here ; but in 42. 5, *si quid opus facto esset* is acc. of limitation : cp. Roby, § 1255.

PAGE 28.

§ 2. si quid ille se velit, 'if he (Caesar) wanted anything with him' ; *volo* takes a double acc. after the analogy of verbs of asking. Ter. *Phorm.* 151, *num quid aliud me vis?*

§ 4. *quid negotii*, to be taken together.

CHAP. 35. § 1. *His responsis*, plural, because the answer consisted of several points.

§ 2. *beneficio affectus*, concessive, 'though treated'; *beneficio*, abl. of manner. R.L.P. 236.

*in consulatu suo*, B.C. 59.

*ut gravaretur*, in apposition to *hanc gratiam*; cp. 5. 1, *ut exeat* (note). *Venire* depends on *gravaretur*.

*postularet*, *Caesar*; note the change of subject.

§ 3. *amplius*: i.e. for the future.

*redderet*, oblique imperative, like *traduceret*.

*illi*, *illis*, the *Sequani*.

*eius*, *Ariovistus*.

*neve* = *et ne*.

§ 4. *fecisset*, *Ariovistus*.

*impetraret*, *Caesar*.

*sese*, repeated afterwards as *se*.

*M. Messala*, *M. Pisone consulibus*, B.C. 61; cp. chapter 2.

*quicumque obtineret*, 'whatever magistrate should hold': this important government was always held by one of the outgoing consuls.

*quod*, 'as far as,' probably to be explained as an archaism for *quoad*; cp. Ter. *Heaut.* 416, *quod potero adiutabo senem*. Cic. *ad Fam.* i. 1. 3, *ut regem reducas, quod commodo reipublicae facere possis*.

*commodo*, abl. of manner.

*se* repeats *sese*, owing to the intervening clauses.

#### PAGE 29.

CHAP. 36. § 1. *Ius ut*: so 43. 8, *consuetudo* is followed by *ut*.

§ 2. *suo iure*, referring to the subject of *uteretur* (the Roman people); in the next line to that of *impediri* (*Ariovistus*).

§ 3. *sibi*: *i.e.* *Ariovisto*.

§ 4. *qui faceret*, causal, 'seeing that he,' etc.

*suo*, *i.e.* *Caesaris*.

*sibi*, *Ariovisto*.

§ 5. *neque ... neque* are correlated, and the clause is therefore not coordinated to the previous one. *Asyndeton* is one of the most noticeable characteristics of Caesar's style.

*iniuria*, 'wrongfully'; *abl.* of manner.

*quod convenisset*: the fuller expression, *quod inter eos convenerat*, is found in Book ii. 19. 6.

*longe ... afuturum*, 'would be too far off to serve them.' Verg. *Aen.* 12. 52, *longe illi dea mater erit*.

*fratrum nomen* = *fratrum n.* From the fact, cp. 11. 3; 33. 2.

§ 6. 'As to Caesar's threatening him (A.) that he (C.) would not overlook the wrongs of the Aedui, no one had ever fought with him (A.) without coming to utter destruction.'

§ 7. *intellecturum*, *eum*.

*invicti Germani*: cp. 39. 1.

*virtute*, 'in the way of valour'; *abl.* of respect.

*tectum*: *i.e.* a settled home.

CHAP. 37. § 1. *eodem ... et*: the two verbs are coordinated. This explains the construction *idem et (atque, ac)* = 'the same as.'

*à Treveris*: the repeated preposition marks that the embassies were distinct.

§ 2. *questum*, 'to complain'; supine, which follows verbs of motion only.

*transportati essent*: what would *transportati erant* have meant?

*fines eorum*; *i.e.* *Aeduorum*: cp. note on 5. 4; *liberi eorum*, 11. 3.

*redimere*, 'gain'; lit. 'take back' (*i.e.* in exchange for the hostages): cp. 44. 12.

*pacem* Ariovisti, 'the good will of A.': cp. such phrases as *pace tua*, 'by your leave.'

Treveri: supply *questum* from § 2.

# PAGE 30.

§ 3. *ripas*, the east bank. The plural is idiomatically used to express various points on the one bank; cp. 54. 1.

§ 4. *veteribus copiis*, 'the original forces'; *i.e.* those now in Gaul. [It is clear that this threatened invasion was an independent one on the part of the Suebi, and that they did not intend merely to act as a contingent of Ariovistus's forces.]

*resisti*, impersonal. Caesar hints at resistance being impossible.

§ 5. *re frumentaria*: 23. 1.

CHAP. 38. § 1. *Vesontio*. Most names of towns in -o are feminine; a few, such as *Sulmo*, *Narbo*, *Hippo*, *Vesontio*, masculine.

*occupandum*, gerundive.

*tridui*. When a substantive of quality (quantity or description) has an epithet, it may be put in the genitive (R.L.P. 255) or ablative (§ 234): cp. 8. 1, *murum pedum sedecim*; 5. 2, *trium mensum cibaria*. Here *tridui* = *trium dierum*.

*quod*, attracted in gender by the predicate *oppidum*: cp. Cic. *Phil.* 5. 14, *Pompeio patre, quod imperio populi Romani lumen fuit, interfecto*; Caes. 7. 68, *Alesiam, quod est oppidum*.

§ 3. *usui*, dative of the purpose (predicative dative): cp. 5. 1.

*facultas*, 'abundance': as Caesar, *facultas navium*; Cicero *facultas nummorum*.

§ 4. *facultatem*, 'facilities'; an awkward repetition of the word.

*ducendum*, 'protracting,' gerundive.

§ 5. *pedum*: cp. note on *tridui*, § 1.

*amplius* rarely influences case (R.L.P. 314), but cp. 15. 5 n.

§ 6. *radices*, acc. after *contingant*; *ripae*, its subject.  
*arcem*, predicate.

§ 7. *magnis itineribus* forms really one word, and so can be further qualified by another adjective without a copula; cp. note on 18. 10.

*ibi*, 'therein' = prep. with pronoun; cp. 49, *munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit*.

CHAP. 39. § 1. *ad*, 'in the neighbourhood of.'

#### PAGE 30.

§ 1. *ex*, 'in consequence of.'

*vocibus*, 'remarks,' 'talk'; so Cicero, *voculae*.

*magnitudine*, *virtute*, abl. of quality. The Romans were thick-set.

*aciem*, 'keenness,' 'fierce glance.'

*congressos*, *armis*.

§ 2. *tribuni militum* were usually young nobles, a kind of amateur soldiers, who accompanied a general in order to gain experience. Six were attached to each legion. (See Introduction on *Roman Army*, p. xxxi.)

*ex urbe*, 'from Rome.'

*reliqui qui ... secuti*, *contubernales*, as they are called.

§ 3. *alius alia causa illata*, 'each bringing forward a separate excuse.' The phrase is abbreviated by the omission of the first part.

*illata* = *in medium prolata*: Phaedrus, i. 1. 4, *iurgii causam intulit*.

*necessariam*, 'urgent'; 16. 6.

*diceret*: 23. 3 (note).

§ 5. *Volgo*, 'universally,' 'on all sides.'

*totis castris*, 'throughout the camp'; abl. of place where.

§ 6. *rem frumentariam*, *ut posset*, 'or they feared that the corn supply could not be brought up country easily enough'; i.e. at such times and in such quantities as to keep the soldiers in fighting trim. This making the subject of a



subordinate clause the object of a principal one is a Greek idiom, belonging in Latin to the conversational rather than literary style. Cp. Ter. *Eun.* 1035, *scin me in quibus sim gaudiis?* The more usual construction is to be seen in Cic., *res vides quomodo se habeat.* ut after verbs of fearing = 'lest not.' By *satis commode* more is meant than is actually said.

§ 7. *nuntiarant*, pluperf., as forming the ground of Caesar's remarks in chap. 40, *incusavit*, etc.

*cum iussisset*, 'when he should command.'

#### PAGE 32.

§ 7. *dicto*, 'his order,' dat. after *audiens*, used as an adj., after the analogy of such trajective words as *parens*, *oboediens*.

CHAP. 40. § 1. The Roman legion contained sixty *centuriae* or *ordines*, and so there were sixty centurions. All these Caesar summoned. In a regular council of war, which this was not, only the chief centurions were summoned.

*consilio ... consilium* : characteristic repetition : cp. 6. 1.

*incusare* stronger than *accusare* ; not found in Cicero.

§ 2. *cur hunc* : note the asyndeton.

*officio*, 'his loyalty.'

§ 3. *Sibi persuaderi*, 'that he was persuaded.' Why would *se persuaderi* be wrong?

*suam*, *Caesaris*.

§ 4. *vererentur* = *veremini*, of direct speech.

*diligentia*, 'accuracy of his plans.'

§ 5. *Factum periculum*, 'a trial had been made.'

*cum* = *quo tempore*.

*videbatur*. The intrusion of the indicative into *oratio obliqua* is remarkable, and is probably due to Caesar's wish to avoid ambiguity, which might be caused by using the subjunctive with *cum* ; the same thing occurs with *ut*, 'as,' *dum*, 'while.' Roby, Latin Grammar, § 1773.

*servili tumultu*, 'the revolt of the slaves,' headed by Spartacus, B.C. 73-71. The point of Caesar's allusion to this was

that many, if not most, of the slaves who took part in it were Germans. [Cic. Phil. 8. 1 : *maiores nostri* tumultum Italicum quod erat domesticus, tumultum Gallicum quod erat Italiae finitimus, praeterea nullum nominabant.]

quos, referring to an antecedent *servos*, implied in *servili*.

tamen : cp. 32. 5, note.

aliquid, adverbial acc.; 'to some extent.'

quae: note the gender. R.L.P. 198. 4.

§ 6. posse : note the mood [and the change of tenses later on in this section.]

quantum boni separated as *quid negotii*, 34. 4.

§ 7. quibuscum, etc. = *quos, cum eis congressi superarint*.

qui, *Helvetii*.

tamen, referring, as often, to a suppressed clause.

#### PAGE 33.

§ 9. Cui rationi ... hac : i.e. *sed hac ratione, cui*; note the clause order.

ipsum, *Ariovistum*.

capi = *in fraudem duci*.

§ 10. 'As for those who threw the blame of their cowardice on to the pretext of the corn supply and the difficulties of the road, they were acting presumptuously, since they seemed either to despair of or to limit their general's capacity.'

§ 12. Note the dative, with *dicto audiens* as a trajective word.

avaritiam, *eorum*. [Caesar might easily recall such matters which had come under his own eye.]

convictam, 'brought home,' = *manifesto cognitam et deprensam*.

§ 13. innocentiam, 'integrity.'

perpetua vita, 'throughout his life' = Greek genitive of time.

§ 14. longiorem diem, 'a more distant period.'

repraesentaturum, 'would do at once.'

## PAGE 34.

§ 15. *praetoria cohors*, 'his body guard,' 'staff' (predicate). First instituted by Scipio Africanus, it consisted partly of officers picked by the general (*praetor* = *prae-itor*), partly of the class mentioned in 39. 2. [Caesar's skill in managing men is well shown in this crisis. Modestly but distinctly he declares that he does not deserve such want of confidence; then by a bold and happy stroke appeals to the loyalty of the 10th legion,—an appeal entirely successful.]

CHAP. 41. § I. *mirum in modum*: cp. for the order of the words *magno cum periculo*, 10. 2; *summam in spem*, 18. 9; *summum in cruciatum*, 31. 2; *quam ob rem*, but *ob eam rem*, 4. 3; *ob eam causam*, 17. 6.

*innata est omnium mentibus* corresponding to *iniectum est* of 46. 4.

§ 2. *princeps gratias egit*, 'was the first to thank him.'

§ 3. *cum tribunis m. egerunt*, 'treated with the tribunes of the soldiers.' The first centurions in each cohort made up a superior body to the rest.

*satisfacerent*, 'make due apology.'

*dubitasse, dixerunt*. A sudden change from *petitio obliqua* to *enuntiatio*.

*summa belli*, 'the conduct of the war'; a favourite phrase with Caesar, who also says *summa imperii*, *summa rerum*.

*suum*, predicate, and emphatically opposed to *imperatoris*.

§ 4. *ex aliis*: i.e. of the other Gauls whom he could turn to account; cp. ii. 3, *Remi qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt*. *alii* = *ceteri*, is an idiom fairly common at all times, but not found in Cicero.

*maximam*. Our idiom requires a comparative. For the idiom 'most of' = 'more than all the rest': cp. Milton, *Par. Lost*, iv. 323: "Adam, the goodliest man of men since born, | his sons, the fairest of her daughters Eve."

*ei*, dat. after *fidem habebat* = *confidebat*.

*ut duceret*, consecutive, depending upon *exquisito itinere*, i.e. 'viz. to lead.'

*miliū amplius quinquaginta*, genitive of quality; *amplius*, as usual, not affecting the construction.

*circuitu*, 'by means of a circuit'; abl. of the instrument.

*locis apertis*, abl. of way or direction by which one goes.

§ 5. *cum iter non intermitteret*. *Cum* with the subj. brings out the casuality more strongly than the abl. abs. would have done: *owing* to the hard marching, he came up. Caesar well knew how much depended upon the coming upon Ariovistus as soon as possible.

*milibus*. The ablative is used more rarely than the acc. to express distance of space, except with the words *spatio* and *intervallo*. In this book we find the accusative at 21. 1, 22. 5, 49, 1; the ablative, 43. 2, 48. 1, 2.

CHAP. 42. § 1. *quod*, 'whereas'; cp. 13. 5, *quod adortus esset*.

*de*, used with transitive verbs, is characteristic of Caesar's style: 27. 1, *de deditione miserunt*; 44. 4, *de stipendio recusare*.

*postulasset*, *Caesar*.

*per se*, 'as far as he was concerned.'

*accessisset*, *Caesar*.

§ 2. 'C. did not reject the terms offered, and thought that at last (*iam*) he was returning to a sound mind.'

*denegasset*: note the compound: why not *denegaverat*?

*ultro*, 'actually'; but in § 4, 'thither.'

§ 3. *pro*, 'considering': cp. 2. 5, *pro multitudine*. [Join *pro beneficiis* and *cognitis suis postulatis*, abl. abs.]

#### PAGE 35.

§ 3. *suis* = *Caesaris*, subjective gen.

*fore uti desisteret*. In translating, omit the circumlocution.

§ 4. *colloquio*, 'for the conference'; cp. *concilio*, 30. 5.

*quintus*. Remember that the Latin reckoning was inclusive.

*ne quem*, 'that no,' etc., in our idiom.

vereri, an indirect statement.

veniret, an indirect command.

alia ratione, abl. of condition.

§ 5. causa = *impedimento*.

neque audebat, 'nor was rash enough to.'

Gallorum equitatu, which Caesar had raised to the number of four thousand : cp. 15. 1.

equis, abl. abs.

equitibus, dat. [Doberenz points out that the point of *omnibus* is that the legionaries would considerably outnumber the Gallic cavalry, so that *all* their horses, reserves included, would be needed for the occasion.]

eo, 'thereon' : cp. note on *ibi*, 38. 7.

quid, adverbial acc., as *aliquid*, 40. 5.

facto, abl.

§ 6. non irridicule : so 39. 1, *non mediocriter*, 'excessively.'

'Having promised to look upon the tenth legion in the light of a praetorian cohort, he was enrolling them in the horse.' The jest lies in the fact that whilst at Rome, where the phrase *ad equum rescribere* was first used, the cavalry were Roman citizens and of higher rank than the legionarii, in Caesar's army they were Gauls and not Roman citizens at all.

CHAP. 43. § 1. *tumulus terrenus*, forming one expression, can be further qualified by an adj., *satis grandis*.

satis : 'tolerably,' 'moderately.'

spatio : note the abl. 41. 5 (note).

ut erat dictum, 'as had been agreed' = *constitutum*.

§ 2. passibus : 41. 5 (note).

§ 3. ex equis ut : for the inverted order, cp. 6. 1, *vix qua*.

#### PAGE 36.

§ 4. *beneficia* : explained by the following *quod*-clauses.

*munera*. These would probably consist of a golden crown, gold plate, and costly dresses.

amplissime, 'in rich abundance : ' cp. Cic. *Phil.*, v. 19. 53, *ut quibus militibus amplissime dati essent*. Xen. *Anab.* 1. 4. 17, Μένωνι δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς.

docebat : 'he sought to explain.'

§ 5. cum, 'although.'

aditum, 'right of way.'

§ 6. quam iustae, 'what real grounds of alliance existed between them and the Aedui.'

§ 7. ut, 'how.'

nostram = *Romanorum*.

§ 8. non modo sed. Note that *etiam* is omitted, as at 20. 3. gratia, dignitate, honore. Latin connects by means of *et* all or none of a series.

iis, dative.

§ 9. in mandatis = *in loco mandatorum*.

at, 'at least.'

CHAP. 44. § 1. A.'s direct answer was short, although his speech was long. Note the want of connecting particles.

§ 2. ipsorum voluntate. A. does not agree with the account given by the Gauls themselves.

non sine : cp. 39. 1, *non mediocriter*.

ipsis, *Gallis*.

#### PAGE 37.

§ 2. quod, relative.

§ 3. ac before *c* is very rarely found.

§ 4. paratus is used by Caesar either with the infinitive = 'ready,' or with *ad* and the gerund = 'prepared.'

de stipendio recusare. Cic. ad Fam. iii. 7. 3 : *plures esse, qui de tributis recusent*.

§ 5. idque : namely, *ut amicus esset* ; not referring directly to *amicitiam*, in which case *eam* would have been needed.

§ 7. *Gallia provincia* : so 30. 2, *terra Gallia*.

§ 8. *vellet, veniret* = *vis, venis*, of *oratio recta*.

*suas, Ariovisti*.

*nostram, Romanorum*. Caesar often in *oratio obliqua* uses *nos* and *noster* when they refer to the Romans, cp. 11. 3.

§ 9. *diceret, Caesar*, = *dicis* of *oratio recta*.

*bello*, 'in the war'; abl. of point of time, rather loosely constructed : cf. 13. 2, note.

#### PAGE 38.

§ 9. *secum, cum Ariovisto*.

*Aedui* after *ipsos* is unnecessary ; but one of the characteristics of Caesar's style is its clearness.

§ 11. *illum* = *te* : i.e. *Caesarem*, as in § 13 ; but § 12 *eum*.

§ 12. *Ariovistus* implies that Caesar's political enemies at Rome had hinted at the desirability of Caesar's death : and probably it was no empty boast.

§ 13. The tenses are worthy of especial remark in this section.

*eius, Caesaris*. [*Ariovistus's* kind offer to Caesar reminds one very forcibly of Lessing's fable of the wolf, who offered to the shepherds to turn sheep-dog.]

CHAP. 45. § 1. *in eam sententiam quare* : i.e. 'to explain why.'

*pati*. Note the change of construction.

*merentes*, more forcible than *meritos*.

§ 2. *Bello superatos*, B.C. 121.

*redegisset* : supply an object *quos* from *quibus*.

*antiquissimum quodque tempus*, 'if in every case claims on the ground of priority ought to be regarded,' or 'respect ought to be paid to antiquity.'

*quam voluisset*, causal, 'seeing that it (the Senate) had determined.'

## PAGE 39.

§ 2. *victam*, 'although conquered,' concessive.  
*suis* : *i.e. Galliae*.

CHAP. 46. § 1. *propius* with acc.

*nostros ... nostros* : cp. the similar repetition of the same word, § 2, *suos, suisque*.

§ 2. *facit, recepit*. Note the sudden change of tenses, the present denoting the *sudden* breaking off of the proceedings.

§ 3. *legionis* depends both upon *periculo* and *proelium*.  
*committendum ut* : 13. 6.

*per fidem* = *fide data adductos*.

§ 4. *omni Gallia*, ablative.

*Romanis*, dative, after *interdicere*.

*impetumque fecissent* depends upon *qua arrogantia* ; supply *usi* to *milites* from the preceding sentence.

CHAP. 47. § 1. *mittit* : *Velle* : supply some such word as *dictum* = 'to say that,' etc.

*coeptus*, not *coepi*, is used with passive infinitives ; *coepit agere*, but *coeptum est agi*.

*neque*, 'but not' = *neque vero*.

*minus*, virtually means 'not.'

§ 3. *Legatum e suis*, 'a representative from among his men' [not 'one of his ambassadors,' which would be *e suis legatis*].

## PAGE 40.

§ 4. *fidem*, 'trustworthiness.'

*cuius pater ... donatus erat*, a parenthesis.

*qua lingua*, 'which Ariovistus used freely.'

*multa* is used nearly as an adverb, *multum* ; so *nullus venit* = 'he did not come.'

*longinqua consuetudine*, 'owing to long familiarity ;' abl. of the efficient cause, or ground. [The use of *longinquus* as ap-



plied to time (with which *cp. de Bello Civili*, iii. 80. 3, *longinqua oppugnatio*) may be contrasted with that of *longior* = 'more distant,' 40. 14.]

*in eo* to be joined with *peccandi*, 'and because the Germans had no cause of offence with regard to him'; another way of saying 'to offend against him,' which would, however, require *in eum*.

§ 5. *cognoscerent*, 'ascertain.'

§ 6. *conclamavit*, 'he shouted aloud,' that the whole army might hear him: the *con-* intensifies, as in *concido*, *convello*, *comminuo*, etc.

*venirent* = *venitis* of *oratio recta*.

*an* is the most emphatic of the interrogative particles, and expresses surprise or indignation.

CHAP. 48. § 1. *castra* in various cases is four times repeated in this section, an illustration of Caesar's preference on occasion of distinctness to every other quality of style; so *locus* is frequently repeated in the next chapter.

§ 3. *instructam*, 'drawn up,' predicate.

*ut ... non*, 'so that ... not,' consecutive [not, 'in order that ... not,' which would be a final clause and demand *ne*].

*potestas*, 'opportunity.'

§ 4. *exercitum*, 'the infantry,' here as often in Caesar, when expressly opposed to *equitatus*.

*equestri proelio*, asyndeton, as so often in Caesar.

§ 5. *hoc*, 'the following.'

*copia*, 'troop,' 'number.'

#### PAGE 41.

§ 6. *durius*, 'at all untoward.'

*si qui* is usually adjectival, *si quis* being the substantival form.

§ 7. *recipiendum*, passive, *recipior* = *recipio me*.

*equorum* depends both upon *iubis* and *cursum*.

CHAP. 49. § 1. *locum ... loco* : cp. notes on 6. 1 ; 48. 1.

§ 3. *numero*, abl. of respect.

*expedita*, agreeing with the plural *milia*, is peculiar. One would have expected *armatorum*, as iv. 1. 4, *singula milia armatorum* ; compare, on the other hand, ii. 4. 5, *armata milia centum*.

§ 4. *opus*, 'the fortification.'

§ 5. *ibi*, 'therein' ; cp. 38. 7 (note).

*castra maiora* : *i.e.* his first camp.

CHAP. 50. § 1. *instituto suo*, 'according to his previous custom' ; so Caesar says *consuetudine sua, praeceptis Caesaris*, etc.

*instruxit, fecit* : note the asyndeton.

§ 2. *circiter*, here only used by Caesar as a preposition, elsewhere as an adverb, *e.g.* 15. 5, 25. 5, 6.

*quae oppugnaret*, 'to attack,' final clause.

#### PAGE 42.

§ 3. *Solis occasu*, 'at sunset,' ablative of time when : so *adventu*, 'on the arrival' ; *discessu*, 'on the departure.'

§ 4. *sortibus*. Tacitus (*Germania*, c. x.) described the method of taking these lots, which consisted chiefly of 'runes' marked on twigs, which were scattered on a white cloth and then selected at haphazard by a priest.

*ex usu* : cp. 30. 2.

§ 5. *fas*, 'the will of the gods.'

CHAP. 51. § 1. *alarios*, 'auxiliaries.' [These Caesar stationed in front, that Ariovistus might be deceived as to his actual strength of legionaries.]

*minus valebat*, 'he was weak.'

*ad speciem*, 'to make a show,' viz. of strength.

§ 2. *generatim*, 'according to their tribes.'

§ 3. *Eo*, 'thereon': cp. *ibi*, 38. 7; *eo*, 42. 5.  
*passis manibus*, 'with outstretched hands.'

CHAP. 52. § 1. Caesar placed five of his legions under the command of *legati*, the remaining sixth under a *quaestor*.

§ 2. *dextro cornu*; viz. of his own army.

PAGE 43.

§ 2. *eam partem*: i.e. the left wing of the enemy.

§ 3. *Ita acriter*, 'so fiercely.'

*itaque* = *et ita*; the *ita* qualifies *repente celeriterque*.

*pila coniciendi*. Note that the gerund is not as usual changed into the gerundive; R.L.P. § 379.

§ 5. *qui insilirent*, 'who consented to leap upon.'

*complures nostri milites*, 'our soldiers in many cases;' so *nostrae naves duae, tres suos manipularios*, phrases employed elsewhere by Caesar.

§ 6. *a sinistro cornu*, 'on the left wing' of the Germans; so *dextro* immediately afterwards.

§ 7. *expeditior*, 'freer to act,' being out of the *mêlée*.

*adulescens*, to distinguish the son from the father.

CHAP. 53. § 1. *omnes* emphatic.

*priusquam pervenerunt*: note the tense and contrast it with *priusquam conaretur*, 19. 3.

*quinque milia passuum*. With this reading (which is that of all the MSS.) we must in all probability suppose that by the Rhine Caesar means the *Ill*, which flowed into the Rhine. [Others read *quinquaginta*, which supposes the Germans to have taken a very roundabout route indeed, and is not probable.]

§ 3. *equitatu*, abl. of instr.

*consecuti*, 'having caught.'

§ 4. *duxerat* = *duxerat in matrimonium*.

## PAGE 44.

§ 4. *trinis* (not *tribus*), as *catenae* in Caesar, and usually in good writers, is used only in the plural, like our English word 'fetters.' But *terni* always means 'three each.'

§ 6. *Quae q. r.* = *et ea*.

*neque quicquam*, 'and because ... nothing.'

*calamitate*, 'death'; euphemism: cp. 18. 9, note.

*gratulatione*, in a passive sense.

CHAP. 54. § 1. *ripas*: cp. 37. 3, note.

*quos ... ex iis*: for this fulness of phrase, which serves to render the grammatical connection more distinct, cp. 12. 3, *eos ... eorum concidit*.

§ 2. These words of Caesar were no empty boast: little as had been his military experience, he had saved Gaul, nay Rome itself, from the utmost danger; and although it was still only September, he was able to send his army into winter-quarters.

§ 3. *ad conventus agendos*, 'for the purpose of holding the assizes,' one of the duties of the Proconsul. Caesar had a still more important reason for going towards Rome; namely, the furthering of his own political ends. See Introduction.

# VOCABULARY.

- A. = Aulus, Roman praenomen.  
a, ab, prep. with abl., *from, by, in the direction of*; a dextro cornu, *on the right wing*; ab Sequanis, l, note, *on the side of the S.*  
ab-do, -dēre, -dīdi, -ditum, v. a., *hide*; a. se in silvas, *go into the woods and hide.*  
ab-dūco, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *lead away.*  
ab-fūtūrus, fut. part. of ab-sum.  
ab-s-ens, -ntis, adj., *absent, distant.* [absum.]  
ab-s-tīneo, -ēre, -tīnui, -tentum, v. n., *abstain, refrain.* [ab-s, teneo.]  
ab-sum, -esse, -fui, v. n., *am absent, am distant, 41*; longe eis abfuturum, *would be too far off to serve them, 36.*  
ac, coord. conj., *and moreover, and.* See atque.  
ac-cēdo, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, v. n., *go to, draw near, am added, 18.* [ad, cedo.]  
ac-ceptus, -a, -um, adj., *acceptable*; a. plebi, *popular, 3.*  
ac-cīdo, -ēre, -cīdi, no sup., v. n., *fall to, happen*; merito accidere, 14, *be deserved.* [ad, cādo.]  
ac-cīpio, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. a., *receive*; suffer, 31. [ad, capio.]  
ac-curro, -ēre, -i, rarely -cūcurri, -sum, v. n., *run to, advance, hasten to.*  
ac-cūso, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *accuse, bring to trial, chide.* [ad, causa.]  
ācer, ācris, ācrē, adj., *sharp, fierce.* [rt. ac.]  
ācies, -ei, f., *battle-array, line*; sharp glance, aciem oculorum, 39, *fierce glance, keenness of eyes.* [rt. ac; cp. acus = needle.]  
ācritēr, adv., *sharply, fiercely.* [acer.]  
ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards, up to, near, in the neighbourhood of, at.* With gerund and gerundive, *for the sake of*; ad speciem, *to make a show of, 51*; ad ripas, 37, *on the banks*; ad praescriptum, nutum, etc., *at or*

- according to*; *ad profec-*  
*tionem, 6, for their start*;  
*ad Id. Apr., by the 13th of*  
*April. Ad multam noctem,*  
*late into the night*; with  
numerals, *to the number of,*  
*about.*
- ad-aequo, -are, -avi, -atum,*  
v. a., *make equal to,*  
*level*; *cursum ad., 48,*  
*they kept up with their*  
*speed.*
- ad-amo, -are, -avi, -atum,*  
v. a., *like very much.*
- ad-dūco, -ēre, -dūxi, -ductum,*  
v. a., *lead to, bring to*; *lead*  
*on, induce, 3.*
- ad-ēquīto, -are, -avi, -atum,*  
v. n., *ride up to.*
- ad-hībeo, -ēre, -uī, -ītum, v.*  
a., *have to, summon to.*  
[*ad, hābeo.*]
- ad-ītus, -ūs, m., approach,*  
*right of way.* [*ad, ire.*]
- Admagetobriga, -ae, f., place*  
where Ariovistus defeated  
Gallic forces, 31.
- ad-mīror, -ari, -atus, v. dep.,*  
*wonder at.*
- ad-missus, -a, -um, part.,*  
*allowed*; *admisso equo, at*  
*full gallop.* [*admitto.*]
- ad-ōrior, -iri, -ortus, v. dep.,*  
*attack.*
- adp.* See *app.*
- ad-scisco, -ēre, -scīvi, -scītum,*  
v. a., *admit, adopt.*
- ad-sum, -esse, -fui, v. n., be*  
*near, be at hand.*
- ādūlescens, -ntis, m. f., a*  
*youth.* [*rt. ol = grow*; *cp.*  
*alo.*]
- ādūlescentia, -ae, f., youth.*  
[*adulescens.*]
- ad-ventus, -ūs, m., arrival.*  
[*advēnio.*]
- ad-versus, -a, -um, adj., un-*  
*successful.*
- ad-vertō, -ēre, -ī, -sum, v. a.,*  
*turn towards*; *animum a.,*  
*observe, 24, n.*
- aedīficiū, -ī, n., building.*  
[*aedes, facio.*]
- Aedui, -ōrum, m. pl., a powerful*  
tribe of Gauls between the  
Saône and Loire, friends of  
the Romans; their chief  
town was Bibracte (Autun).
- Aeduus, -a, -um, adj., Aeduan.*
- aegrē, adv., hardly, with*  
*difficulty.* [*aeger.*]
- Aemīlius, -ī, m., Lucius*  
*Aemilius, decurion of Gal-*  
*lic horse, 23.*
- aequītās, -ātis, f., equity,*  
*fairness.* [*aequus.*]
- aequo, -are, -avi, -atum, v.*  
a., *equalize, make equal.*  
[*aequus.*]
- aēquus, -a, -um, adj., equal,*  
*level, advantageous.*
- aestās, -ātis, f., summer.* [*cp.*  
*uro, ustus.*]
- af-fēro, -ferre, at-tūli, al-*  
*lātum, v. a., bring to, afford.*  
[*ad, fero.*]
- af-fīcio, -ēre, -fēcī, -fectum,*  
v. a., *treat*; a. dolore ali-  
quem, *annoy one*; affici  
dolore, *to be annoyed*; a.  
supplicio aliquem, *to punish*  
*one*; affici beneficio, 35, *to*  
*be treated with kindness.*  
[*ad, facio.*]

- af-fīnitas, -ātis, f., *kinship, relationship*. [af-finis = *relation*.]  
 afuturus. See absum.  
 āger, -gri, m., *field, estate, district*; pl., *the lands, the country*.  
 ag-grēdior, -i, -gressus, v. dep., *attack, assail*. [ad, grādior.]  
 ag-men, -mīnis, n., *army marching in column*; primum a., *the van*; novissimum a., *the rear*; agmen claudō, *bring up the rear*. [ago.]  
 āgo, -ēre, ēgi, actum, v. a., *do, act, drive*; egit cum Caesare, *treated with Caesar*; ad conventus agendos, 54, *to hold the assizes*.  
 ālācrītas, -ātis, f., *briskness; eagerness*. [alacer = *brisk*.]  
 ālārīi, -ōrum, m. pl., orig. *allies who fought on the wings (alae) of a Roman army*, but in 51 *auxiliaries, i.e. light-armed skirmishers, who also fought on the wings*. [ala = *wing*.]  
 āliēnus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to another; of ground, disadvantageous*. [alius.]  
 āliquam-diū, adv., *for some time*. [āliquis, diu.]  
 āli-quis, -qua, -quid, adj., *some one, anyone*.  
 ālius, -a, -ud, adj., *other, another*; alius alia causa illata, 39, n., *each bringing forward a separate excuse*.  
 Allōbrōges, -um, m. pl., a Gallic people between the Rhone, Isère, and Lake of Geneva, with chief city Vienne.  
 ālo, -ēre, -ui, -tum, (-itum), v. a., *feed, nourish, foster*.  
 Alpes, -ium, f. pl., *the Alps, mountain ranges separating Italy from France and Switzerland*.  
 alter, -ēra, -ērum, adj., *one of two, the other of two, second*; pl., *the other (party)*; alteri ... alteri, *the one party ... the other party*.  
 altitūdo, -īnis, f., *height, depth*. [altus.]  
 altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep*.  
 Ambarri, -orum, m. pl., Celtic people in Gaul between the Saône, Rhone, and Ain; kinsmen of the Aedui; called Aēdui Ambarri, 11.  
 ā-mentia, -ae, f., *madness, folly*. [a, mens = *mind*.]  
 āmīcītia, -ae, f., *friendship*. [amicus.]  
 āmīcus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly, loyal*, 42. [amo.]  
 āmīcus, -i, m., *friend*. [amo.]  
 ā-mitto, -ēre, -mīsi, -missum, v. a., *lose; destroy*, 28.  
 āmor, -ōris, m., *love*. [amo.]  
 amplissimē, superl. adv., *very abundantly, in rich abundance*, 43.  
 amplius, comp. adv., *more; any more, for the future*, 35, etc.

- amplus**, -a, -um, adj., *large, illustrious*; comp. *amplior, larger, more*. [am (i.e. ambi), rt. ple.]
- an**, conj., *whether, or*, introducing the second member of a disjunctive sentence; *utrum (nē) ... an, whether ... or*.
- an-ceps**, -cipitis, adj., *two-fold*, 26. [an (i.e. ambi), caput.]
- angustiae**, -arum, f. pl., *narrowness, defiles*. [angustus.]
- angustus**, -a, -um, adj., *narrow*. [ango = *throttle*.]
- anim-ad-vertō**, -ēre, -i, -sum, v. a., *perceive*; a. in aliquem, 19, *rebuke or punish a man*. Also written *animum adverto*.
- ānīmus**, -i, m., *mind, disposition*; pl. *courage*; *affections*, 20; in animo esse, 7, etc., *intend*; *animum offendere*, 19, *hurt the feelings*; *animum adverto*, with acc., *observe*, see *animad-vertō* above.
- annus**, -i, m., *year*.
- annuus**, -a, -um, adj., *yearly*. [annus.]
- antē**, prep. with acc., *before*; adv., *before, formerly*.
- anteā**, adv., *previously*. [ante ea(m, rem).]
- antīquus**, -a, -um, adj., *ancient*; *antiquissimum quodque tempus*, see *quisque*. [ante.]
- āpērio**, -ire, -ui, -tum, v. a., *open*.
- āpertus**, -a, -um, adj., *exposed*; of country, *open, clear*. [aperio.]
- ap-pello**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *call*. [ad, pello.]
- ap-pēto**, -ēre, -ivi (-ii), -itum, v. a., *strive after, try to get*. [ad, pēto.]
- Āprīlis**, -is, m., the month of *April*, prop. adj., *sc. mensis*.
- āpūd**, prep. with acc., *at, in, among, with, in the presence of*.
- Āquīleia**, -ae, f., a town in North Italy.
- Aquītāni**, -orum, m. pl., the inhabitants of S.W. Gaul.
- Āquītānia**, -ae, f., the southern of the three divisions of Gaul.
- Ārār**, **Arāris**, acc. **Ararim**, 12, m., the *Saône*, rising in the Vosges and running into the Rhone at Lyon.
- arbītrium**, -i, n., *pleasure, will*. [arbīter = *umpire*; ad = *to*; bito = *go*.]
- arbītror**, -ari, -atus, v. dep., *think, consider*. [arbiter.]
- arcesso**, -ēre, -ivi, -itum, v. a., *call, summon*. [ar = ad, cēdo.]
- Āriōvistus**, -i, m., German king.
- arma**, -orum, n. pl., *arms, weapons*. [rt. ar = *fit*.]
- armo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *arm, equip*. [arma.]
- Arverni**, -orum, m. pl., Gallic people defeated by Q. Fabius Maximus, B.C. 121;



name survives in mod. Auvergne.  
 ar-rōganter, adv., *presumptuously*. [arrogans.]  
 ar-rōgantia, -ae, f., *presumption*. [ad, rogo.]  
 arx, arcis, f., *citadel, fortress*. [arceo.]  
 a-scendo, -ēre, -i, -sum, v. a., *mount, climb up*. [ad, scando.]  
 a-scensus, -ūs, m., *ascent*. [ascendo.]  
 at, conj., *but*; *at least*, 43.  
 atquē, coord. conj.; *and, and also*; with words of dissimilarity, *than*; par atque, 28, *the same as*. [ad-que.]  
 at-tingo, -ēre, -tīgi, -tactum, v. a., *touch upon, border upon*. [ad, tango.]  
 auctor, see augeo.  
 auctōritās, -ātis, f., *influence*. [auctor, augeo.]  
 audācia, -ae, f., *boldness, audacity*. [audax.]  
 audacter, adv., *boldly*. [audax.]  
 audeo, -ēre, ausus, v. n., *semi-dep., dare*.  
 audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. a., *hear*; dicto audiens non esse, 39, *to be mutinous*.  
 augeo, -ēre, auxi, auctum, v. a., *augment, make to increase*; p. p. auctus, *increased*, comp. auctiores, 43, *advanced*.  
 Aulus, -i, m., *a Roman praenomen*.  
 aut, conj., *or*; aut... aut, *either... or*. [cp. alterum.]

autem, conj., *but, moreover*. [aut.]  
 auxilium, -i, n., *help*; a. ferre, *to bring aid*; pl. auxilia, *auxiliary troops*, cc. 15, etc., consisting of Gallic horse; Numidian, Cretan, Balearic slingers. [augeo.]  
 āvārītia, -ae, f., *covetousness, greed*. [avarus, aveo.]  
 ā-vertō, -ēre, -i, -sum, v. a., *turn away; estrange from*, 2; a. iter, *to divert one's course*; aversus hostis, 26, *a retreating foe*.  
 āvus, -i, m., *grandfather*.

barbārus, -a, -um, adj., *uncivilized, barbarous*.  
 barbārus, -i, m., *foreigner, barbarian*. [Bάρβαρος.]  
 Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., the inhabitants of that part of Gaul between the Seine, Rhine, Marne, and North Sea.  
 bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., *warlike*. [bellum.]  
 bellicus, -a, -um, adj., *warlike*. [bellum.]  
 bello, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n., *war, wage war*. [bellum.]  
 bellum, -i, n., *war*. [duo, old form du-ellum.]  
 bēnē-fīcium, -i, n., *kindness, favour*. [bene, facio.]  
 Bibractē, -is, n., chief town of the Aedui, between the Arar and Loire, now Autun.  
 bīdium, -i, n., *space of two days*. [bi-, dies.]

bī-énnum, -i, n., *space of two years.* [bi-, annus.]

bī-partīto, adv., *in two divisions.*

Bituriges, -um, m. pl., *tribe in Aquitania; capital was Avaricum, mod. Bourges, 18.*

Boii, -orum, m. pl., *a Celtic people allied with the Helvetii.*

bōnitas, -ātis, f., *goodness, fertility.* [bonus.]

bōnum, -i, n., *good, advantage.* [bonus.]

bōnus, -a, -um, adj., *good; bono animo esse, to be well-disposed.*

bracchium, -i, n., *arm.*

brēvis, -e, adj., *short.*

Caburus, C. Valerius, *a Gaul, father of Procillus, q. v., 47.*

cādo, -ēre, cēcīdi, cāsum, v. n., *fall.*

Caesar, -āris, m., *cognomen in the gens Iulia; esp. Gaius Iulius Caesar, the author of the Commentaries.*

cālāmitas, -ātis, f., *disaster.* [cādo.]

Cālendae, -arum, f. pl., *kalends, the first of every month.* [calo = call; cp. καλέω.]

cāpio, -ēre, cēpi, captum, v. a., *take; cāpit initium ab, begins at; c. plus doloris, feel more pain; c. arma, take up arms; c. locum, reach a place; c. nomen, 13, win an evil name.*

captivus, -i, m., *prisoner of war.* [capio.]

cāpūt, -ītis, n., *head, person.*

carrus, -i, m., *cart.*

Cassiānus, -a, -um, adj. of *Cassius; bello C., 13, the war with Cassius.*

Cassius, -i, m., *L. Cassius Longinus, consul B.C. 107, cut to pieces with his army by the Tigurini and Ambrones.*

castellum, -i, n., *small fort, stronghold.* [castrum = fort.]

Castīcus, -i, m., *a Sequanian chief.*

castra, -orum, n. pl., *camp.* [cp. casa = cottage, cassis = helmet.]

cāsus, -ūs, m., *chance, accident.* [cado.]

Catamantaloedes, -is, m., *a Sequanian chief, 3.*

cātēna, -ae, f., *used by Caesar only in pl., chain.*

Caturīges, -um, m. pl., *a people in the Province.*

causa, -ae, f., *reason, case, cause, excuse, pretext; dicere causam, stand one's trial; causam inferre, bring forward a reason; causam cognoscere, inquire into a case; causā, with gen., for the sake of.*

cāveo, -ēre, cāvi, cautum, v. n., *be on one's guard.*

cēlērītas, -ātis, f., *swiftness, speed.* [cēler.]

cēlērīter, adv., *swiftly, speedily.* [cēler.]

Celtae, -arum, m. pl., *the Celts,*

- i.e. the inhabitants of Gaul proper.
- censeo**, -ēre, -ui, -um, v. a., *decree*; esp. of the Senate, c. 35.
- census**, -ūs, *enumeration*. [censeo.]
- centum**, card. adj., *a hundred*.
- centurio**, -ōnis, m., *centurion*, officer over 100 men. [centum.]
- certus**, -a, -um, adj., *fixed, certain*; certiore facere, *to inform*; certior fieri, *to be informed*. [cerno.]
- [cētērus], -a, -um, adj., *rare* in sing., not found in nom. masc., *the rest*; pl. *the others*.
- Ceutrōnes**, -um, m. pl., *a people* in the Province, with chief town Darantasia, now Centron in Savoie.
- cibāria**, -orum, n. pl., *provisions, food*. [cibus.]
- Kimberius**, -i, m., *chieftain* of the Suebi, 37.
- Cimbri**, -ōrum, m. pl., *a German tribe*, invaded Italy, conquered by Marius.
- cingo**, -ēre, cīxi, cinctum, v. a., *surround, invest*.
- circīnus**, -i, m., *pair of compasses*.
- circiter**, adv. and prep. with acc., *about*, esp. of numbers.
- circū-itus**, -ūs, m., *going round, circuit*; in circuitu, 21, *on its opposite side*. [circum, eo = go.]
- circum**, prep. with acc., *around, near*.
- circum-do**, -dāre, -dēdi, -dātum, v. a., *put round, surround*.
- circum-dūco**, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *lead round, draw round*.
- circum-sisto**, -ēre, -stīti, v. n., *stand round, surround*.
- circum-vēnio**, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, v. a., *come round, enclose, entrap*.
- cītērior**, -us, comp. adj., *nearer, hither*, i.e. nearer to Rome; Provincia citerior = Cisalpine Gaul, 10, etc.; called Gallia citerior, 24, etc. [citra.]
- citrā**, prep. with acc., *on this side of*.
- citrō**, adv., *hither*; ultro citroque, *backwards and forwards*.
- cīvitas**, -ātis, f., *citizenship, state*. [civis = citizen.]
- claudio**, -ēre, -si, -sum, v. a., *shut*; c. agmen, *bring up the rear*.
- cliens**, -ntis, m., *a dependant*. [clueo = hear.]
- Cn.** = Gnaeus, a Roman praenomen.
- co-ēmo**, -ēre, -ēmi, -emptum, v. a., *buy up*.
- coepe**, -isse (perf. with pres. meaning), v. defect. a. and n., *begin*.
- co-erceo**, -ēre, -ui, -ītum, v. a., *restrain, hold in check*. [co-, arceo.]
- cōgīto**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *ponder, reflect upon*. [co-, agito.]

**co-gnosco**, -ĕre, -gnōvi, -gnītum, v. a., *discover, ascertain, learn*; causam c., *inquire into a case*. In tenses derived from perf. stem (cognovi, etc.), *know*.

**cōgo**, -ĕre, cōĕgi, coactum, v. a., *bring together, compel*. [co-, āgo.]

**cōhors**, -rtis, f., *cohort*, 10th part of Roman legion; praetoria cohors, 40, *body-guard*.

**cōhortor**, -ari, -atus, v. dep., *exhort, encourage*.

**collātūrus**, see conféro.

**col-līgo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *fasten together*, 25.

**collis**, -is, m., *hill*. [cp. cel-sus, culmen.]

**col-lōco**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *put, station, settle*; nuptum col., *give in marriage*, 18.

**col-lōquium**, -i, n., *conference*.

**col-lōquor**, -i, -lōcutus, v. dep., *talk with, confer with*.

**com-būro**, -ĕre, -bussi, -bus-tum, v. a., *burn up*. [con, buro (=uro).]

**cō-mīnus**, adv., *hand to hand*. [cō-, mānus.]

**com-mēātus**, -ūs, m., *supplies, commissariat*. [commeo.]

**com-mēmōro**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *call to mind, relate*.

**com-meo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n., *go to and fro*, l, n.; *resort*.

**com-mitto**, -ĕre, -mīsi, -mis-sum, v. a., *bring together*; *do wrong, commit offence*,

14; c. pugnam or proelium, *join battle*; c. aliquid alicui, *entrust something to some one*; c. ut, *bring about that, cause to*, 13, etc.

**com-mōdē**, adv., *conveniently, suitably*; satis commode, *easily enough, properly*.

**com-mōdum**, -i, n., *advantage*, 35.

**commōdus**, -a, -um, adj., *proper, suitable, convenient*.

**com-mōnē-fācio**, -ĕre, -fēci, -factum, v. a., *remind*.

**com-mōveo**, -ĕre, -mōvi, -mō-tum, v. a., *move thoroughly, influence greatly, disturb*; c. pugnam, *force battle*.

**com-mūnio**, -ire, -ivi, -ītum, v. a., *fortify strongly*.

**com-mūnis**, adj., *common, general*, 30, etc. [con, mūnus.]

**com-mūtātio**, -ōnis, f., *alteration, change*.

**com-mūto**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *alter, change*.

(1) **com-pāro**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *prepare, procure*. [com, paro.]

(2) **com-pāro**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *set in pairs, match; compare*. [compar.]

**com-pērio**, -ire, -i, -tum, v. a., *ascertain*; compertum habere, *to know for certain*, 44.

**com-plector**, -i, -plexus, v. dep., *embrace*. [rt. plec = *fold*.]

**com-pleo**, -ĕre, -ēvi, -ētum, v. a., *fill completely, cover*.

- com-plūres**, -a (or -ia), adj., *many, several*; c. nostri milites, *soldiers of ours in many cases*, 52.
- comporto**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *carry together, bring together*.
- cōnāta**, -orum, n. pl., *attempts*. [cōnor.]
- cōnātus**, -ūs, m., *attempt*. [cōnor.]
- con-cēdo**, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, v. a., *grant, allow*; concedendum non putabat, *thought permission ought not to be given*.
- con-cīdo**, -ēre, -cīdi, -cīsum, v. a., *cut to pieces*. [con, caedo.]
- con-cīlio**, -are, -avi, -atum, *win over, bring about, procure*. [concilium.]
- con-cīlium**, -i, n., *assembly, meeting, council*.
- con-clāmo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *shout out*.
- con-curro**, -ēre, -i, -sum, v. n., *run together, run in a body*.
- con-cursus**, -ūs, m., *running together, massing*; onset, 8, etc. [concurro.]
- con-dīcio**, -ōnis, f., *state (of mind or body), terms*. [con-dīco.]
- con-dōno**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *forgive*.
- con-dūco**, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *bring together*.
- con-fēro**, -ferre, -tūli, collatum, v. a., *bring together, compare, attribute to, contribute*; collaturus in longiorem diem, 40, *postpone*; suum timorem in simulationem c., 40, *throw the blame of their cowardice on to the pretext of...*; c. se, *betake oneself*, 26; c. culpam, *lay the blame*.
- con-fertus**, -a, -um, adj., *crowded*; confertissima acie, 24, *in very dense array*. [confercio.]
- con-ficio**, -ēre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. a., *do, accomplish, finish*; write, 29. [facio.]
- con-fido**, -ēre, -fisus, v. n. semi-dep., *trust*.
- con-firmo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *fix, strengthen, establish*; make firmly, 3; encourage, assert.
- con-grēdior**, -i, -gressus, v. dep., *meet with, fight*. [grādior.]
- cōn-icio**, -ēre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. a., *hurl*; c. in cātenas, *throw into chains*. [con, iācio.]
- con-iungo**, -ēre, -nxi, -nctum, v. a., *join*; c. se, *effect a junction*, 37.
- con-iūratio**, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy*. [con, iūro = swear.]
- cōnor**, -ari, -atus, v. dep., *try, attempt*.
- con-quīro**, -ēre, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum, v. a., *search out, seek after*. [quaero.]
- con-sanguīneus**, -a, -um, adj., *kin-*; pl. *kinsmen*. [sanguis.]
- con-scisco**, -ēre, -scīvi, -scītum,

- v. a., *determine*; mortem sibi conscivit, *brought about his own death*. [scio.]
- con-scius, -a, -um, adj., *conscious*. [scio.]
- con-scribo, -ĕre, -psi, -ptum, v. a., *enrol, levy*.
- con-sensus, -ūs, m., *agreement, consent*. [consentio.]
- con-sēquor, -i, -sēcūtus, v. dep., *follow up, pursue, obtain*.
- Considius, P., Roman officer, 21.
- con-sīdo, -ĕre, -sēdi, -sessum, v. n., *take up a station, settle*.
- con-sīlium, -i, n., *plan, design, purpose; council of war*. [rt. sed = sit.]
- con-sisto, -ĕre, -stīti, -stītum, v. n., *stand, halt; be posted; take one's stand*.
- con-sōlor, -ari, -atus, v. dep., *comfort*.
- con-spectus, -ūs, m., *sight*. [conspicio.]
- con-spicio, -ĕre, -spexi, -spectum, v. a., *behold, observe*. [con, spēcio.]
- con-spīcor, -ari, -atus, v. dep., *see, descry*.
- con-stantia, -ae, f., *firmness*. [con, sto.]
- con-stīto, -ĕre, -ui, -ūtum, v. a., *draw up, station, arrange, appoint*; v. n., *resolve*. [con, stātuo.]
- consuesco, -ĕre, -suēvi, -suētum, v. n., *accustom oneself, grow accustomed*; in perf., *become accustomed*; quo consuerant intervallo, 22, *at the usual distance*.
- consuesse = consuevisse, perf. infin. of consuesco.
- consuētūdo, -īnis, f., *custom, usage, familiarity*; cons. victus, 31, *way of life*. [consuesco.]
- consul, -ūlis, m., *consul*, one of the two chief magistrates of the Roman State. [rt. sed = sit.]
- consūlātus, -ūs, m., *office of consul, consulate*. [consul.]
- consūlo, -ĕre, -ui, -tum, v. a., *take counsel*.
- consultum, -i, n., *resolution*; esp. in phr. senatūs consultum, *decree of the Senate*.
- con-sūmo, -ĕre, -psi, -ptum, v. a., *use up, destroy, waste*.
- contendo, -ĕre, -i, -tum, v. n., *strive, contend, fight; endeavour, hasten*.
- contentio, -ōnis, f., *rivalry, contest*. [contendo.]
- contīnenter, adv., *continuously, without interruption*. [contīneo.]
- contīneo, -ĕre, -ui, -tentum, v. a., *bound, restrain, shut in, confine*.
- contingo, -ere, -tīgi, -tactum, v. a., *touch, extend to*; v. n., *happen*. [con, tango.]
- contīnuus, -a, -um, adj., *successive, unbroken*. [contīneo.]
- contrā, prep. with acc., *against*; adverb, *in reply, on the contrary*; against him, 18.

contrāho, -ĕre, -traxi, -trac-  
tum, v. a., *bring together,*  
*collect.*

con-tŭmēlia, -ae, f., *insult,*  
*affront.* [con, tŭmeo=*swell.*]

con-vēnio, -ire, -vēni, -ven-  
tum, v. n., *come together,*  
*assemble, agree; v. a., to*  
*meet; quod convenissent,*  
*36, which they had agreed*  
*upon.*

con-ventus, -ūs, m., *meeting;*  
*pl. assizes, 54.* [convēnio.]

con-verto, -ĕre, -i, -sum, v.  
a., *turn; c. signa, face*  
*round, 25; pass., bechanged;*  
*in fugum c., put to flight;*  
*itinerē converso, with*  
*changed route.*

con-vinco, -ĕre, -vīci, -victum,  
v. a., *prove conclusively;*  
*bring home to, 40.*

con-vōco, -are, -avi, -atum,  
v. a., *call together, summon.*

cōpia, -ae, f., *plenty, supply,*  
*abundance; troop, number,*  
*48; copiam facere, to sup-*  
*ply, 28; pl., forces, sup-*  
*plies, wealth.* [co-, op-; cp.  
ōpes.]

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj., *well-*  
*supplied, rich.* [copia.]

cōram, adv., *in person, 32.*  
[co-; ōs, ōris.]

cornu, -ūs, n., *horn; of an*  
*army, wing.*

corpus, -ōris, n., *body.*

coss. = consules, consulibus.

cōtīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., *daily;*  
*every day, i.e. usual, 19.*

cōtīdiē, adv., *day by day,*  
*daily.*

Crassus, -i, m., (1) M. Licinius  
Crassus, triumvir with  
Caesar and Pompey, fell  
B.C. 53, against the Par-  
thians, 21; (2) his son,  
who also fell in the Par-  
thian war, commanded  
Caesar's horse, 52.

crēmo, -are, -avi, -atum, v.  
a., *burn.*

creo, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a.,  
*appoint, make.*

cresco, -ĕre, crēvi, crētum, v.  
n., *become great, grow*  
*powerful.*

crīnis, -is, m., *hair.*

crūciātus, -ūs, m., *torture,*  
*31.* [crūcio.]

crūdēlitas, -ātis, f., *cruelty.*  
[crūdēlis.]

crūdēlītēr, adv., *cruelly.*  
[crūdēlis.]

cultus, -ūs, m., *civilization.*  
[cōlo.]

cum, prep. with abl., *with,*  
*together with; written after*  
*the personal pronouns, e.g.*  
*mecum, tecum, etc.*

cum (also written quum),  
conj., *when, since, although,*  
*whereas; cum .. tum, both*  
*... and.*

cūpīdē, adv., *eagerly; cupi-*  
*dins, 15, too eagerly.* [cūpī-  
dus.]

cūpīdītās, -ātis, f., *longing,*  
*eagerness, desire.* [cūpī-  
dus.]

cūpīd-ius, -issimē, comp. and  
sup. of cupide.

cūpīdus, -a, -um, adj., *eager*  
*for, desirous of.* [cūpio.]

- cūpio**, -ēre, -ivi or -ii, -itum, v. a., *desire*; c. alicui, *to desire a person's good, wish one well*, 18.
- cur**, adv., *why*. [quā-rē.]
- cūra**, -ae, f., *care, anxiety*; curae often as predicative dat., e.g. sibi eam rem curae futurum, 33, *that he would attend to that matter*; haec sibi esse curae, *that he was anxious for these things*, 40.
- cūro**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *take care of, provide, see that a thing is done*; with gerundive, e.g. pontem faciendum curat, 13, *he has a bridge built*. [cūra.]
- cursus**, -ūs, m., *running, speed*, 48. [curro.]
- custōs**, -ōdis, m. f., *guard, keeper*. [cf. scūtum=*shield*.]
- damno**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *condemn*. [damnum, *that which is given (paid), dare*.]
- dē**, prep. with abl., *from*, 31; *of the number of*, 15; *concerning*, 7, 14, 18, 27; *qua de causa, for which reason*; *de tertia vigilia, about or in the course of the third watch*.
- dēbeo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. a., *owe, ought*; d. facere, *I ought to do*. [dē, hābeo.]
- dē-cēdo**, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, v. n., *depart*.
- dēcem**, card. adj., *ten*.
- dē-certo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n., *fight it out*.
- dē-cīdo**, -ēre, -i, v. n., *fall down from*. [cādo.]
- dēcīmus**, -a, -um, ordinal adj., *tenth*. [dēcem.]
- dē-cīpio**, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. a., *deceive*. [cāpio.]
- dē-clāro**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *announce*. [clārus.]
- dēcūrio**, -ōnis, *officer of a decuria, i.e. of ten horse*. [decem.]
- dē-dītio**, -ōnis, f., *surrender*; in deditionem accipere, *to receive the submission of*. [dēdo.]
- dē-dīticius**, -a, -um, adj., *one who has surrendered*. [dēdo.]
- dē-do**, -ēre, -didi, -ditum, v. a., *give up, surrender*.
- dē-dūco**, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *lead away*.
- dē-fātigo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *tire out*.
- dē-fendo**, -ēre, -i, -sum, v. a., *keep off, avert, protect*.
- dē-fessus**, -a, -um, adj., *worn out*.
- dē-fētiscor**, -i, -fessus, v. dep., *become quite faint*. [cp. fāteor.]
- de-indē**, adv., *then, in the next place*. [inde.]
- dē-īcio**, -ēre, -iēci, -iectum, v. a., *throw down*; ea spe deiecti, *foiled of that hope*, 8. [iācio.]
- de-iectus**, -a, -um, part. of dēicio.
- dē-lectus**, -i, a levy. [dēligēr José.]



- dē-libero**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *weigh well, consider.* [cp. *libra* = *balance*.]  
**dē-līgo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *bind down, bind fast, moor ship.*  
**dē-līgo**, -ēre, -lēgi, -lectum, v. a., *choose.*  
**dē-mīnuo**, -ēre, -ui, -ūtum, v. a., *make less, lessen.*  
**de-missus**, -a, -um, adj. (of places), *low-lying*, capite demisso, *with bowed head.*  
**de-mitto**, -ēre, -mīsi, -missum, v. a., *let down.*  
**dē-monstro**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *show, point out.*  
**dēmum**, adv., *at length.* [akin to *denique*.]  
**dē-nēgo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *refuse utterly.*  
**dēni**, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral, *ten each.*  
**dēnīquē**, adv., *at length, at last, finally.*  
**dē-nuntio**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *intimate, threaten.*  
**de-perdo**, -ēre, -dīdi, -dītum, v. a., *lose entirely.*  
**dē-pōno**, -ēre, -pōsui, -pōsitum, v. a., *lay down, lay aside.*  
**dē-pōpūlor**, -ari, -atus, v. dep., *ravage utterly*; p. part. in pass. sense, ll, n.  
**dē-prēcātor**, -ōris, m., *intercessor*; eo deprecatore, *with him to plead their cause.* [prēc-.]  
**dē-sēro**, -ēre, -sērui, -sertum, v. a., *forsake, abandon.*
- dē-signo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *point at, denote.*  
**dē-sisto**, -ēre, -stiti, -stītum, v. n., *leave off, cease from.*  
**dē-spēro**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n., *despair.*  
**dē-spīcio**, -ēre, -spexi, -spectum, v. n., *look down upon, disdain.*  
**dē-stīti**, perf. of *dēsisto*.  
**de-stītuo**, -ēre, -ui, -ūtum, v. a., *forsake, abandon.* [stātuo.]  
**de-stringo**, -ere, -nxi, -ctum, v. a., *unsheath.*  
**dē-sum**, -esse, -fui, v. n., *am wanting, fail.*  
**dē-sūper**, adv., *from above.*  
**dētēr-ior**, -uſ, comp. adj.; *worse; less valuable*, 36.  
**dē-terreo**, -ēre, -ui, -ītum, v. a., *frighten off, deter.*  
**dē-trāho**, -ēre, -traxi, -tractum, v. a., *remove, take away.*  
**dē-trī-mentum**, -i, n., *loss, injury.* [de-tero, detrītum.]  
**dēus**, -i, m., *god.*  
**dē-vēho**, -ēre, -vexi, -vectum, v. a., *carry down.*  
**dexter**, -tra, -trum (-tēra, -tērum), adj., *on the right side, right.*  
**dextēra** or **dextra**, -ae, f., *right hand.*  
**dīcio**, -onis, f., *sway, rule.*  
**dīco**, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *say, speak, tell, name*; d. causam, *stand one's trial*; d. diem, *name a day for trial*, etc.

- dictio, -ōnis, f., *saying, pleading*. [dīco.]  
dictum, -ī, n., *word, order*; dicto audiens non esse, 39, *to be mutinous*. [dīco.]  
dīdici, perf. of disco.  
dies, -ei, m. and f., pl. m. *day, multo die, well on into the day, diem ex die ducere, 16, delay from day to day; in longiorem diem, 40, to a more distant date, time, 8.*  
dif-fēro, -ferre, distūli, dilātum, v. n., *differ, be distinguished*.  
dif-fīcilis, -e, adj., *difficult*. [fācilis.]  
dignitās, -atis, f., *honour, dignity*. [dignus.]  
diligentia, -ae, f., *carefulness, zeal; accuracy of his plans, 40.*  
dī-mitto, -ēre, -mīsi, -missum, v. a., *send in different directions, dismiss*.  
dīr-īmo, -ēre, -ēmi, -emptum, v. a., *break up*. [dis, ēmo.]  
dis-cēdo, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, v. n., *depart; ab officio disc., 40, forget his allegiance*.  
disciplīna, -ae, f., *training, discipline*. [disco.]  
disco, -ēre, dīdici, v. n., *learn*.  
dis-īcio, -ēre, -iēci, -iectum, v. a., *scatter, rout*. [dis, iācio.]  
dis-iect-, supine stem of dis-īcio.]  
dī-spergo, -ēre, -si, -sum, v. a., *scatter*. [spargo.]  
dis-pōno, -ēre, -pōsui, -pōsitum, v. a., *set in different parts, station*.  
dīt-issimus, -a, -um, superl. adj. from dis, *most wealthy*.  
dīū, adv., *for a long time*.  
dī-urnus, -a, -um, adj., *by day*. [dies.]  
dīūturnitas, -ātis, f., *length (of time), long duration, 40*. [dīūturnus.]  
dīūturnus, -a, -um, adj., *long, protracted (of time)*. [diu.]  
dīves, -ītis, adj., *rich, wealthy*.  
Divīco, -ōnis, m., *the leader of the Helvetii when they defeated Cassius, B.C. 107, and of their embassy to Caesar, B.C. 58.*  
dī-vīdo, -ēre, -vīsi, -vīsum, v. a., *divide*.  
Divitiācus, -i, m., *brother of Dumnorix, Aeduan chief, and loyal to Caesar*.  
dō, dāre, dēdi, dātum, v. a., *give; dare inter se, exchange; dari, was caused, 14; d. in mandatis, 43, to give by way of commission*.  
dōceo, -ēre, -ui, -tum, v. a., *teach, inform*.  
dōleo, -ēre, -ui, -ītum, v. n., *grieve, be sorry*.  
dōlor, -ōris, m., *pain, grief, resentment*.  
dōlus, -ī, m., *guile, deceit, fraud*.  
dōmicīlium, -ī, n., *dwelling, habitation*. [dōmus.]  
dōmus, -ūs, f., *house, home; domum, to home, homewards; domi, at home*.

- dōno**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *give, present.*
- Dūbis**, -is, m., *the Doubs, a river in Gaul, 38.*
- dūbītātio**, -ōnis, f., *doubt, hesitation.* [dūbīto.]
- dūbīto**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n., *doubt, hesitate.*
- dūbius**, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful.*
- dū-centi**, -ae, -a, card. adj., *two hundred.*
- dūco**, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *lead, carry, bring, consider; delay, put off, 16; protract war, 38; d. uxorem, d. in matrimōnium, marry a wife.*
- dum**, conj., *while, until.*
- Dumnōrix**, -īgis, m., a chief of the Aedui) brother of Divitiacus, ally of the Helvetii against Caesar.
- duō**, -ae, -o, card. adj., *two.*
- duo-dēcim**, card. adj., *twelve.*
- dūrus**, -a, -um, adj., *hard, severe, toilsome; siquid erat durius, 48, in case of any difficulty.*
- dux**, dūcis, m. f., *leader, general, guide.* [dūco.]
- e**, ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from, in consequence of; ex commutatione, owing to a change; diem ex die ducere, 16, delay from day to day; ex consuetudine sua, according to their custom; ex vinculis, in chains; ex usu, to the advantage of; ex communi consensu, by general consent; soror ex matre, 18, sister on his mother's side; ex equis, 43, on horseback; ex itinere, 25, etc., straight from their march.*
- ē-do**, -ēre, -dīdi, -dītum, v. a., *put out, exhibit; inflict on, 31.*
- ē-dūco**, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *lead out.*
- ef-fēmīno**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *make womanish, enervate.* [fēmīna.]
- ef-fēro**, -ferre, ex-tūli, ē-lātum, v. a., *carry forth; proclaim, spread abroad.*
- ef-ficio**, -ēre, -fēcī, -fectum, v. a., *make, render.* [fācio.]
- ēg-**, perfect stem of āgo.
- ēgo**, me, pers. pron., *I, me.*
- ē-grēdior**, -i, -gressus, v. dep., *come out, leave.* [grādior.]
- ē-grēgius**, -a, -um, adj., *eminent, excellent.* [e grēgē = out of the herd.]
- ē-gressus**, from ēgrēdior.
- ē-lāt-**, supine stem of ef-fēro; *ēlātum est, it got abroad.*
- ē-mīgro**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n., *depart from, emigrate.*
- ē-mitto**, -ēre, -mīsi, -missum, v. a., *send out; cast away, 25.*
- ēmo**, -ēre, ēmi, emptum, v. a., *buy.*
- ēmōlimentum**, -i, n., *effort, difficulty, labour.* [cf. moles.]
- ēnim**, conj., *for.* [nam.]
- ē-nuntio**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *disclose, publish, divulge.*

- ěō, adv., *thither, there; of cause, on that account; thereon, 42, etc. [is.]*  
 ěo, ire, ii (ivi), ětum, v. n., *go, march.*  
 ěodem, adv., *to the same place; eodem pertinere, 14, pointed in the same direction.*  
 ěquēs, -ětis, m., *horseman; pl., the cavalry. [ěquus.]*  
 ěquestĕr, -tris, -trĕ, adj., *horse-, cavalry-. [eques.]*  
 ěquĭtātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry. [equēs.]*  
 ěquus, -i, m., *a horse; ex equo, on horseback.*  
 ě-rept-, supine stem of ěrĭpio.  
 ě-rĭpio, -ěre, -rĭpui, -reptum, v. a., *snatch away, wrest away; rescue; eripuit se, saved himself. [rapio.]*  
 et, conj., *and; adv., also, even; et ... et, both ... and.*  
 ětiam, conj., *also; often quin etiam, moreover. [et, iam.]*  
 ětiam-sĭ, conj., *even if.*  
 et-sĭ, conj., *although.*  
 ě-vello, -ěre, -i, rarely -vulsi, -vulsum, v. a., *pull out.*  
 ex. See e.  
 ex-cĭpio, -ěre -cĕpi, -ceptum, v. a., *take, receive. [cāpio.]*  
 ex-emplum, -i, n., *example, precedent; exempla cruciatuque, 31, n., modes of punishment and torture.*  
 ex-eo, -ire, -ii, -ětum, v. n., *go out, go forth.*  
 ex-erceo, -ěre, -ui, -ětum, v. a., *practise. [arceo.]*  
 exercĭtātio, -ōnis, f., *practice. [exerceo.]*  
 exercĭtātus, -a, -um, adj., *practised, skilled.*  
 exercĭtus, -ūs, m., *army. [exerceo.]*  
 ex-irem, ex-issem, from exeo.  
 existĭmatio, -ōnis, f., *judgment, opinion, reputation. [existĭmo.]*  
 existĭmo, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *think, reckon, deem. [ex, aestimo.]*  
 expecto, or exspecto, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n. and a., *wait; await, expect. [ex, specto.]*  
 expĕditus, -a, -um, adj., *unencumbered, without baggage; of road, etc., clear, free from obstacles; expeditior, 52, freer to act. [ex, ped-.]*  
 ex-pĕrior, -iri, -pertus, v. dep., *try, prove, experience.*  
 ex-plōrātor, -ōris, m., *scout, spy.*  
 ex-prĭmo, -ěre, -pressi, -pressum, v. a., *press out, extort, 32. [prĕmo.]*  
 ex-pugno, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *storm, carry by storm.*  
 ex-quĭro, -ěre, -quĭsivi, -quĭsitum, v. a., *ascertain. [quaero.]*  
 ex-sĕquor, -i, -sĕcūtus, v. dep., *follow up; assert authority, 4.*  
 ex-specto. See expecto.  
 ex-tĕrus, -a, -um, adj., *outward. [ex.]*

**extrā**, prep. with acc., *beyond*.  
[ex.]

**extrēmum**, -i, n., *end, extremity*. [superl. of *exterus*.]

**extrēmus**, -a, -um, superl. adj., *last, furthest*.

**ex-ūro**, -ēre, -ussi, -ustum, v. a., *burn up, consume*.

**Fābius**, -i, m., Q. Fabius Maximus Allobrogicus, defeated B.C. 121 the Allobroges, Arverni, and Ruteni, at the junction of the Isère and Rhone, 45.

**fācīlē**, adv., *easily*; comp. *facilius*; superl. *facillime*. [neut. of *facilis*.]

**fācīlis**, -e, adj., *easy*. [facio.]

**fācīnus**, -ōris, n., *deed, esp. crime*. [facio.]

**fācio**, -ēre, fēci, factum, v. a., *do, make*; *express opinion*, 41; *use force*, 8; *build bridge*, 13; *iter facere, march*; *copiam facere*, 28, *supply*; *facere arroganter*, 40, *act presumptuously*; *sui potestatem facere*, 40, *give an opportunity of approaching him*; *hoc proelio facto*, 13, *after this battle*; f. *proelium, fight battle*. For pass. see *fiō*.

**factio**, -onis, f., *faction, party*. [facio.]

**factum**, -i, n., *deed*; *opus facto, need of action*. [facio.]

**fācultas**, -atis, f., *opportunity, means, abundance*; *facilities*, 38; pl., *resources*. [facilis.]

**fā-mes**, -is, f., *hunger*.

**fāmilīa**, -ae, f., *gang of slaves, household*; *matres familiae*, 50, *matrons*. [famulus = *slave*.]

**fāmilīāris**, -e, adj., *belonging to a familia*; *familiar, intimate*; *res f.*, 18, *private property*, as subst., *a friend*, 19, etc.

**fās**, indecl. n., *the will of the gods*. [rt. *fa* = *speak*; cp. *fari*.]

**fātum**, -i, n., *fate, destiny*. [rt. *fa*; cp. *fas*.]

**fāveo**, -ēre, fāvi, fautum, v. n., *am favourable, favour*.

**fēlicītas**, -ātis, f., *happiness, success*. [fēlix.]

**fērē**, adv., *almost, chiefly, for the most part*.

**fēro**, *ferre, tūli, lātum*, v. a., *carry, bring*; *endure, suffer*; *graviter f.*, 14, *am annoyed or indignant at*; *signa ferre*, 39, *to advance*.

**ferrum**, -i, n., *iron, iron point, sword*.

**fērus**, -a, -um, adj., *fierce, savage, wild*; superl. *maxime ferus*.

**fīdes**, -ei, f., *faith, loyalty*; *one's word, pledge*; *confidence*; *per fidem*, 46, *owing to their trust in his word*.

**fīlia**, -ae, f., *daughter*.

- filius**, -i, m., *son*.  
**fin**go, -ēre, finxi, fictum, v.  
 a., *form, fashion, feign* ;  
 vultum f., 39, *command*  
*their countenance, i.e. look*  
*cheerful*. [lit. = *handle*.]  
**finis**, -is, m., *end* ; pl.,  
*borders, territories*. [= fid-  
 nis ; cp. findo.]  
**finitimus**, -a, -um, adj., *neigh-*  
*bouring* ; as subst., especi-  
 ally in pl., *neighbour*.  
 [finis ; for termination cp.  
 legi-timus, māri-timus.]  
**fio**, fieri, factus, v. quasi pass.  
 used as pass. of facio, *am*  
*made, become, happen* ; fac-  
 tum est ut, 31, *the result*  
*was that*.  
**firmus**, -a, -um, adj., *strong*,  
*firm*.  
**Flaccus**, -i, m., a Roman sur-  
 name ; G. Valerius Flaccus,  
 47. [prob. = "loose-eared."] *]*  
**flāgito**, -are, -avi, -atum, v.  
 a., *demand, keep asking*.  
**fleo**, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, v. n.,  
*weep*.  
**flētus**, -ūs, m., *weeping*.  
 [fleo.]  
**flōrens**, -tis, adj., *prosperous*,  
*flourishing* ; florentissimis  
 rebus, *though their power*  
*was at its height*. [cp. flos,  
 floreo.]  
**flūmen**, -inis, n., *stream, river*.  
 [fluo.]  
**flu**o, -ēre, fluxī, fluxum, v. n.,  
*flow*.  
**fōrē**, from sum.  
**fortis**, -e, adj., *brave, bold*.  
 [cp. fero.]  
**fortitūdo**, -inis, f., *courage*,  
*bravery*. [fortis.]  
**fortūna**, -ae, f., *fortune* ; pl.  
*property*. [fors, fero.]  
**fossa**, -ae, f., *ditch, trench*.  
 [fodio.]  
**frango**, -ēre, frēgi, fractum,  
 v. a., *break, ruin, wreck*.  
**frāter**, -tris, m., *brother*.  
**frāternus**, -a, -um, adj., *bro-*  
*therly* ; f. nomen, *the title*  
*of brothers*. [frater.]  
**frīgus**, -ōris, n., *cold*. [cp.  
 rigeo = *am stiff*.]  
**fructūōsus**, -a, -um, adj., *pro-*  
*ductive, fruitful, abundant*.  
 [fructus.]  
**fructus**, -ūs, m., *fruit*. [rt.  
 frug ; cp. fruor, fruges.]  
**frūmentārius**, -a, -um, adj.,  
*of corn, corn-growing* ; res  
 frumentaria, *the corn sup-*  
*ply*. [frumentum.]  
**frūmentum**, -i, n., *corn*. [rt.  
 frug ; see fructus.]  
**[frux]**, frūgis, f., *defect*,  
 generally in pl., *fruit*,  
*crop*.  
**fu-**, perf. stem of esse (sum).  
**fūga**, -ae, f., *flight* ; in fugam  
 conicere or convertere, *to*  
*put to rout*.  
**fūgio**, -ēre, fūgi, fūgitum, v.  
 n., *flee*. [fuga.]  
**fūgitivus**, -i, m., *runaway*,  
*fugitive* ; runaway slave, 23.  
 [fugio.]  
**fundo**, -ēre, fūdi, fūsum, v.  
 a., *pour, rout, overthrow*.  
**fūror**, -ōris, m., *rage, mad-*  
*ness, fury*.  
**fūtūrus**, -a, um, from sum.

- dat. of the person and acc. of the thing demanded; absol. rule, 31.
- im-petro, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *get, obtain*. [in, patro = effect.]
- im-pētus, -ūs, m., *attack, onset, assault; force*. [impeto; in, peto.]
- im-plōro, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *beseech, entreat, beg*.
- im-pōno, -ēre, -pōsui, -pōsitum, v. a., *place upon, mount upon, impose (tribute)*.
- im-porto, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *bring into, import*.
- im-prīmis, adv., *among the first, chiefly, especially*. [in, primus.]
- im-prōbus, -a, -um, adj., *wicked, bad, unscrupulous*. [in, probus.]
- im-prō-vīso, adv., *unexpectedly, on a sudden*. [in, pro, video.]
- im-pugno, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *attack, fight against*.
- impuls-, supine stem of impello.
- im-pūne, adv., *without punishment, loss, or harm; impune*. [in, poena.]
- im-pūnītās, -ātis, f., *safety from punishment, impunity*. [im-puno.]
- in, prep. with acc., *into, upon, against, towards, according to, for*; in suos, 16, *over his countrymen*, in eos, 43, *in their favour*; with abl., *in, on, among, during*; si in eo manerent, 36, *if they held by the agreement*.
- in-cendo, -ēre, -i, -sum, v. a., *burn, set on fire*. [in, candeo; cp. accendo, succendo.]
- in-cīdo, -ēre, -i, -cāsum, v. n., *fall in with, meet, come upon*.
- in-cītātus, -a, -um, *enraged, excited*. [part. of incito.]
- in-cīto, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *urge on, arouse, excite*.
- in-cōlo, -ēre, -ui, -cultum, v. a., *inhabit*; v. n., *dwell*.
- in-cōlūmis, -e, adj., *safe*.
- in-commōdum, -i, n., *disaster, misfortune, trouble*.
- in-crēdībilis, -e, adj., *incredible, not to be believed*. [credo.]
- in-cūso, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *blame, censure, reproach*; vehementer eos incusavit, *he rated them severely*, 40. [in, causa.]
- in-dē, adv., *thence (of place); after that, then (of time)*, [im (locative of is) de.]
- in-dīcium, -i, n., *information, per indicium, by informers*. [index; in, rt. dic.]
- in-dīco, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *declare publicly, appoint, proclaim*.
- in-dūco, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *lead on, persuade, excite*.
- in-dulgeo, -ēre, -si, -tum, v. a., *indulge (with dat.)*, 40. [cp. dulcis.]
- in-ermus, -a, -um (-is, -e), adj., *unarmed*. [in, arma.]

**in-fēr-ior**, -us, comp. adj., *lower*. [infra.]

**in-fēro**, -ferre, -tūli, illātum, v. a., *bring in or against, carry on against; inflict wounds, 50; inflict upon, 12, etc.; inf. signa, 25, to charge; bring forward, 39.*

**in-flecto**, -ĕre, -flexi, -flexum, v. a., *bend*.

**in-fluo**, -ĕre, -fluxi, -fluxum, v. n., *flow into (of a river)*.

**ingens**, -ntis, adj., *vast, huge*.

**in-icio**, -ĕre, iniĕci, iniectum, v. a., *throw in, inspire*.

[in, iacio.]

**in-iect-**, supine stem of iniĕcio.

**in-īmicus**, -a, -um, adj., *unfriendly*. Subst., -i, m., *foe, enemy*. [in, amicus.]

**in-īquus**, -a, -um, adj., *unjust, unfavourable; iniquum est, with inf., it is unfair, 44.*

[in, aequus.]

**in-ītium**, -i, n., *commencement, beginning*. [in, ire.]

**in-iūria**, -ae, f., *injustice, wrong, outrage; abl., in-iuriā, wrongfully*. [ius.]

**in-iussu**, subst. m., only in abl. sing., *iniussu suo, without his orders, 19*. [in-iussus, iubeo.]

**in-nascor**, -i, -natus, v. dep., *be born in; spring up*.

**in-nōcentia**, -ae, f., *blamelessness, integrity, 40*. [noceo.]

**in-ōpia**, -ae, f., *want*. [op.-]

**in-ōpinans**, -ntis, adj., *not expecting, unaware*.

**in-quīro**, -ĕre, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum, v. a., *inquire*. [quaero.]

**in-sciens**, -ntis, adj., *not knowing*.

**in-sēquor**, -i, -sēcūtus, v. dep., *follow up*.

**in-sīdiae**, -arum, f. pl., *ambuscades, ambush, treachery; per insidias, 42, treacherously*. [sedeo.]

**in-signē**, -is, n., *ensign, distinction*. [insignis.]

**insignia**, -um, n. pl., *accoutrements*. [insignis.]

**in-signis**, -e, adj., *distinguished, signal*. [in, signum.]

**in-sīlio**, -ire, -ui, v. n., *leap into or upon*. [in, salio.]

**in-sōlenter**, adv., *insolently, haughtily*.

**in-stītuo**, -ĕre, -ui, -ūtum, v. a., *instruct, train*. [in, stātuo, lit. set up, set on foot.]

**in-stītūtum**, -i, n., *custom, resolve*. [instituo.]

**in-sto**, -āre, -stīti, v. n., *press forward, assail; be near*.

**in-struo**, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *draw up, arrange, form*.

**intel-lēgo**, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *understand, perceive; usually with acc. and inf.* [inter, lego.]

**inter**, prep. with acc., *between, among, during; inter se differunt, differ from one another*.

**inter-cēdo**, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum, v. n., *come between, exist between, interpose*.

**inter-clūdo**, -ĕre, -si, -sum, v. a., *cut off*. [claudio.]



- inter-dīco, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *forbid to use*, with dat. of person, abl. of thing, 46.
- inter-dŭ, adv., *by day*. [dies.]
- inter-dum, adv., *sometimes*.
- inter-eā, adv., *meanwhile*. [perhaps = inter ea(m) rem.]
- inter-esse. See inter-sum.
- inter-ficio, -ēre, -fēci, -fec-tum, v. a., *slay*. [facio.]
- int̄r-im, adv., *meanwhile*. [inter, im (old acc. of is).]
- inter-mitto, -ēre, -misi, -mis-sum, v. a., *put between; interrupt, relax*, 41; *inter-missū nocte*, *night having intervened*, 27; *flumen inter-mittit*, *leaves a gap*, 38; *itinere intermisso*, 26, *the march having been discontinued*; *triduo intermisso*, 26, *after three days' interval*.
- inter-nēcio, -ōnis, f., *destruction, annihilation*. [inter, nēco.]
- inter-pello, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *interrupt, obstruct*.
- inter-pōno, -ēre, -pōsui, -pōsitum, v. a., *interpose, allege*, 42, *bring in*.
- inter-pres, -ētis, m. f., *interpreter*.
- inter-sum, -esse, -fui, v. n., *am between, take part in*; *impers. interest, it is a care*.
- inter-vallum, -i, n., *interval*; *quo consuerat intervallo*, *at the usual distance*, 22.
- [lit. the open space between the breastworks (vallum) of a camp.]
- intrā, prep. with acc., *within*. [contr. from interā, (parte).]
- in-tueor, -ēri, -itus, v. dep., *look upon*.
- in-tŭl-, perf. stem of in-fero.
- in-vēnio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, v. a., *come upon, find*.
- in-victus, -a, -um, *invincible*.
- in-vito, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *invite, induce*.
- invitus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling*; *se invito*, *against his wish*.
- ipse, -a, -um, pron., *self*; *him-, her-, it-self*; *themselves*; sometimes used in oblique cases for *se, sibi*, etc.
- irācundus, -a, -um, adj., *passionate, angry*.
- irē. See eo.
- ir-rīdicŭlē, adj., *without wit*, 42. [in, ridiculus; rideo.]
- is, ea, id, pron., *that*; *he, she, it*; *eo magis*, *so much the more*, 53; pl. *they, them*.
- itā, adv., *so, thus*. [is.]
- Itālia, -ae, f., *Italy*, especially North Italy (i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.)
- itāquē, adv., *and so, therefore*. [ita, que.]
- item, adv., *also, likewise*. [is.]
- īter, it̄neris, n., *way, road, route, march, expedition, journey*; *magnis itineribus*, *by forced marches*, 7; *facere*

- iter, *to march*, 10 ; ex itinere, *straight from their march*. (= itiner, from it-, supine stem of eo.)
- it̃erum, adv., *a second time* ; semel atque iterum, *once and again*, 31. [acc. s. of comparative of is.]
- iacto, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *cast or throw about* ; metaph., *discuss*, 18. [freq. of iacio.]
- iam, adv., *now, already, by this time* ; with negative, *any longer*. [= diam, collat. form of diem ; cp. pri-dem, du-dum.]
- iūba, -ae, f., *mane*.
- iūbeo, -ēre, iussi, iussum, v. a., *command, bid*. [perhaps = ius habeo.]
- iūdicium, -i, n., *judgment, trial, decision*. [iudex.]
- iūdīco, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a. and n., *judge, determine, pronounce, decide*. [iudex.]
- iūgum, -i, n., *yoke*, i.e. two upright spears and a third placed upon them, □, under which a defeated army was forced to go, 7, 12 ; of mountains, *ridge*. [cp. iungo.]
- iūmentum, -i, n., *beast of burden*. [= iugimentum iungo.]
- iungo, -ēre, -nxi, -nctum, v. a., *join, join together*. [rt. iug ; cp. ζεύγνυμι.]
- Iūra, -ae, m., *the Jura*, a range of mountains between the Sequani and Helvetii, from the Rhone to the Rhine.
- iuro, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n. and a., *swear*.
- ius, iūris, n., *right, authority, law* ; sing. *rights*, 28 ; ius belli, *the customs of war*, 36.
- ius-iūrandum, iuris-iurandi, n., *oath*, 3, 30.
- iustitia, -ae, f., *justice*. [iustus.]
- iustus, -a, -um, adj., *just, right, exact, complete, real*. [ius.]
- iūvo, -are, iūvi, iūtum, v. a., *help*.
- Kalendae, -arum, f. pl., *kalends* (1st) of month. See calendae.
- L. = Lucius, Roman praenomen.
- Lābiēnus, -i, m., *Titus Labienus*, 54, Caesar's chief lieutenant-general, afterwards deserted to Pompey, and fell B.C. 45 at Munda.
- lābōr, -ōris, m., *labour, toil*.
- lābōro, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n., *labour, be in distress, be anxious*. [labor.]
- lācesso, -ēre, -ivi, -itum, v. a., *harass, attack, challenge*. [lacio = entice ; laqueus.]
- lācrīma, -ae, f., *tear*. [= dacruma ; cp. δάκρυ, tear.]
- lācus, -ūs, m., *lake*.
- lāpis, -īdis, m., *stone*.
- largior, -iri, -itus, v. dep., *spend money, bribe*, 18. [largus.]

- largīter**, adv., *extensively*; l. posse, *be very powerful*.  
**largitio**, -ōnis, f., *profusion, liberality, bribery*. [largior.]  
**lātē**, adv., *widely, far and wide*. [latus.]  
**lātītudo**, -inis, f., *width, breadth*. [latus.]  
**Latovīci**, -ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe living near modern Baden, 2, 28, 29.  
**lātus**, -a, -um, part. of fero.  
**lātus**, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide*.  
**lātus**, -ēris, n., *side*; (of an army), *flank*; aperto latere, *on the exposed flank*, 25. [πλατύς.]  
**laus**, -dis, f., *praise, renown*. [for claus, cp. cluo.]  
**lēgātio**, -ōnis, f., *embassy*. [lēgare = *charge with a commission*.]  
**lēgātus**, -i, m., (i.) *ambassador, envoy*; (ii.) *lieutenant-general*; l. pro praetore, 24. These adjutants, appointed by the Senate, 10 in number, led different divisions of the army. [legare.]  
**lēgic**, -ōnis, f., *legion*, consisting of 10 cohorts and a troop of horse. (Each cohort contained from 300 to 360 men, 3 manipuli; each manipulus 100 to 120 men and 2 centuriae.) [lēgo.]  
**lēgiōnārius**, -a, -um, adj., *legionary, belonging to the legion*. Also subst. [legio.]  
**Lēmānus lācus**, m., *lake of Geneva*, 2, 8.
- lēnitas**, -ātis, f., *gentleness, slowness*, 12. [lenis.]  
**Leuci**, -orum, m. pl., Celtic people on the Moselle, 40.  
**lex**, lēgis, f., *enactment, law*. [cp. ligo = *bind*.]  
**lībenter**, adv., *willingly*. [libens, libet.]  
**līber**, -era, -erum, adj., *free, unrestrained, unchecked*.  
**lībērālītās**, -ātis, f., *generosity*. [liberalis = *generous*; liber.]  
**lībērē**, adv., *freely, without check*. [liber.]  
**lībēri**, -orum, m. pl., *children*. [liber.]  
**lībertyās**, -ātis, f., *freedom*. [liber.]  
**līceor**, -ēri, -itus, v. dep., *bid*.  
**līcet**, -ēre, -uit (-itum est), v. impers., *it is lawful, allowed*.  
**Lingōnes**, -um, m. pl., Celtic people in the Vosges, near the sources of the Marne and Maas, with chief town Andematūnum (Langres).  
**lingua**, -ae, f., *tongue, language*. [= *dingua*; cp. tongue.]  
**linter**, -tris, f., *skiff, boat*.  
**Liscus**, -i, m., the chief magistrate (vergobretus) of the Aedui.  
**lītēra** or **littera**, -ae, f., *letter of alphabet*; pl. *an epistle*; Graecis litteris, 29, *in Greek characters*.  
**lōcus**, -i, m. (pl. -i and -a), *place, ground, position; room*, 40; abl. loco, *in the light of*, 42; loci natura,

- 2, the character of the country; locus superior, vantage ground, eodem loco, 26, in the same light.
- longē**, adv., *far; too far off*, 36; non longius abesse, to be not farther distant than, etc.; longe lateque, far and wide. [longus.]
- longinquus**, -a, -um, adj., *distant; of time, long; longinqua consuetudinae*, 47, n., *owing to long familiarity*. [longus.]
- longitūdo**, -inis, f., *length; in longitudinem, in length*.
- longus**, -a, -um, adj., *long, distant*.
- lōquor**, -i, lōcūtus, v. dep., *speak, say, talk*. [cp. λάσκω.]
- Lūcius**, -i, m., Roman praenomen.
- lūna**, -ae, f., *moon*. [= lucna, that which shines.]
- lux**, lūcis, f., *light, especially daylight; primā luce, at daybreak*.
- M.** = Marcus, Roman praenomen.
- māgis**, adv., *more, eo magis, so much the more*. [cp. magnus.]
- māgistrātus**, -ūs, m., *magistrate, magistracy*. [The rank of a magister.]
- magnitūdo**, -inis, f., *greatness, size*. [magnus.]
- magno ōpērē** or **magnopere**, adv., *greatly, especially, more than one should*, 13.
- magnus**, -a, -um, adj., *great, magnis itineribus, by forced marches*. [rt. magh; cp. maior, maiestas.]
- māior**, -us, comp. adj., *greater*. [= magh-ior.]
- māiōres**, -um, m. pl., *ancestors*. [maior.]
- mālē**, adv., *ill, badly, unsuccessfully*. [malus.]
- mālēficiūm**, -i, n., *mischief, harm*, 7. [mālus, făcio.]
- mālus**, -a, -um, adj., *bad; mālum*, -i, n., *evil*.
- mandātum**, -i, n., *command, commission, charge; in mandatis, by way of commission*, 43. [mando.]
- mando**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *entrust, command; sese fugae mandarunt, betook themselves to flight*. [manui do = give into the hand.]
- māneo**, -ēre, -si, -sum, v. n., *remain; si in eo manerent, if they held by the agreement*, 36. [rt. man = think; thinking leading to hesitation.]
- mānus**, -ūs, f., *hand; band, force*. [rt. ma, man, that which makes.]
- Marcomani**, -orum, m. pl., *the Marchmen, a contingent of Ariovistus's forces*.
- Marcus**, -i, m., Roman praenomen, usually expressed by the letter M.
- Mārius**, -i, m., *Gaius Marius*, B.C. 157-86, a great Roman general who had saved

- Italy from the Gauls, and who was the bitter foe of the Aristocrats and Sulla, 40.
- mătăra**, -ae, f., *pike*, 26.
- māter**, -tris, f., *mother*; *matres familiae*, 50, *matrons*. [rt. *ma*, *the maker*; cp. *manus*.]
- mātrīmōnium**, -i, n., *marriage*; *dare in matrimonium*, *to give in marriage*; *ducere in mat.*, *to marry*. [mater.]
- Matrōna**, -ae, f., *the Marne*, a river which flows into the Seine just south of Paris.
- mātūrē**, adv., *early*; *maturnius*, *too early*; *quam maturrime*, *as early as possible*, 33. [maturus.]
- mātūro**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n., *hasten*. [maturus.]
- mātūrus**, -a, -um, adj., *ripe*, *timely*. [rt. *ma* = *measure*, *time*.]
- maximē**, adv., *very greatly*, *chiefly*, *most*, *very*; *quam maxime*, *as greatly as possible*. [used as superl. of *magno opere*.]
- maxīmus**, -a, -um, adj., *greatest*; *quam maximus*, *as great as possible*. [superl. of *magnum*.]
- Maxīmus**, -i, m. See *Fabius*.
- mēdiocrīter**, adv., *in a slight measure*; *non mediocriter*, *in no slight degree*, *exceedingly*, 39. [mediocris; *medius*.]
- mēdius**, -a, -um, adj., *middle*, *in the middle*; *medius collis*, *the middle of the hill*; *medium utriusque*, 34, *equidistant from both*.
- mēmōria**, -ae, f., *memory*, *remembrance*; *memoriam proderet*, 13, *hand down a record of disaster*; *memoriā tenēre*, *remember*. [memor; cp. *memini*, *reminiscor*.]
- mens**, -ntis, f., *mind*. [rt. *men*; cp. *memini*, *memor*.]
- mensis**, -is, m., *month*. [ma, *measure*, lit. *measure of time*.]
- mercātor**, -oris, m., *trader*. [mercor = *trade*; *merx*, *wares*.]
- mercēs**, -ēdis, f., *pay*. [mereo = *earn*.]
- mēreo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. a.; **mēreor**, -ēri, -itus, v. dep., *earn*, *win*, *deserve*; *optime merens*, 45, *most deserving*.
- mēridiēs**, -ei, m., *mid-day*, *south*. [= *medidies*, from *medius dies*.]
- mēritum**, -i, n., *good deed*, *service*; *abl. merito*, *by the desert*; *merito accidere*, 14, *be deserved*. [mereo.]
- Messāla**, -ae, m., *Marcus Messala*, Roman Consul B.C. 61; 2, 35.
- mētior**, -iri, *mensus*, v. dep., *measure out*; *frumentum militibus*. [rt. *ma*.]
- Mētius**, -i, m., *Marcus Metius*, envoy of Caesar to Ariovistus, by whom he was detained, but at last rescued, 47, 53.

- mīlēs**, -ītis, m., *soldier*.  
**mīlia**, -ium, pl. subst., *thousands*.  
**mīlītāris**, -e, adj., *military*; *res militaris*, *military tactics*, 21. [miles.]  
**mīllē**, card. adj. indecl., *a thousand*. [perhaps rt. mil = unite.]  
**mīnīmē**, **mīnīmum**, adv., *least, not at all*; *minime saepe*, *least often*; *minimum posse*, 20, *to have least influence*.  
**mīnimus**, -a, -um, adj. used as superl. of *parvus*, *smallest, least*.  
**mīnor**, -us, adj. used as comp. of *parvus*, *smaller, less*.  
**mīnuo**, -ēre, -ui, -ūtum, v. a., *lessen, diminish*. [cp. minor.]  
**mīnus**, adv., *less, the less*; sometimes almost *not*, e.g. *si id minus vellet*, 47, *if he were unwilling to do that*; with abl. of comparison, *quo, eo, nihilo*, etc. [minor.]  
**mīror**, -ari, -atus, v. dep., *wonder, wonder at*. [mirus.]  
**mīrus**, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful, strange*.  
**mīsēr**, -ēra, -ērūm, adj., *wretched, deplorable*; *m. fortuna*, 32.  
**mīsērōr**, -ari, -atum, v. dep., *pity, bewail*. [miser.]  
**mitto**, -ēre, **mīsi**, **missum**, v. a., *send*; *hurl spear*; *misit qui cognoscerent*, *sent men to reconnoitre*.  
**mōdo**, adv., *only, just*; *non modo ... sed etiam*, *not only ... but also*. [orig. abl. of *modus*.]  
**mōdus**, -i, m., *limit, measure, manner, fashion*; *mirum in modum*, *in a wonderful fashion*, 41.  
**mōlimentum**, -i, n., *effort, exertion*, 34. [mōlior, mōles = mass.]  
**mōlo**, -ēre, -ui, -ītum, v. a., *grind*; *cibaria*, 5. [mola.]  
**mōneo**, -ēre, -ui, -ītum, v. a., *advise, remind, warn*. [rt. men; cp. *memor, meminī*.]  
**mons**, -ntis, m., *mountain*. [perhaps cp. *mineo* = *project*.]  
**mōrior**, -i, **mōrtuus**, v. dep., *die*. [cp. *morbus, marceo*.]  
**mōror**, -ari, -atus, v. dep., *delay*. [mora.]  
**mors**, -rtis, f., *death*. [moriōr.]  
**mortuus**, -a, -um, part. of *moriōr*, *dead*. [mors.]  
**mos**, **mōris**, m., *custom*, usually pl. [cp. *ma*. = *measure*.]  
**mōveo**, -ēre, **mōvi**, **mōtum**, v. a., *move, stir, dislodge*. [cp. *muto*.]  
**mūlier**, -ēris, f., *woman*. [perhaps = *mollior*, comp. of *mollis*.]  
**multitūdo**, -īnis, f., *crowd, large number*; *the people*, 17; *pro multitudine hominum*, 11, *considering their population*. [multus.]  
**multo**, abl. with comparatives, *much*; *multo facilius*, *much easier*. [multus.]

**multum**, adv., *much, a great part, very*. [multus.]

**multus**, -a, -um, adj., *much*; pl., *many*; multo die, *late in the day*; qua multa utebatur, *which he used largely*; ad multam noctem, 26, *late into the night*.

**mūnio**, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. a., *fortify, protect* (lit. *to wall*; moenia.)

**mūnitio**, -ōnis, f., *fortifying*, 49; concrete, *rampart, fortification*, 8, 10; operis munitione, 8, *by the strength of the works*. [munio.]

**mūnus**, -ēris, n., *duty, performance*; present. [cp. moenia, munis, etc.]

**mūrus**, -i, m., *wall*. [rt. mu; cp. moenia, munus.]

**nact**-, supine stem of nanciscor.

**nam**, conj., *for*. [acc. fem. cp. ne (*verily*), num.]

**Nammeius**, -i, m., a Helvetian noble sent as ambassador to Caesar.

**namquē**, conj., *for*. [namque.]

**nanciscor**, -i, nactus, v. dep., *get, obtain, find*. [cp. necesse.]

**Nasua**, -ae, m., chieftain of the Suevi, 37.

**nātio**, -ōnis, f., *nation*. [rt. gna; cp. nascor.]

**nātūra**, -ae, f., *nature, character*. [rt. gna.]

**nāvicūla**, -ae, f., *small ship, boat*. [navis.]

**nāvis**, -is, f., *ship*; navis longa, *ship of war*. [cp. vaūs.]

**nē**, (1) conj., *in order that not, lest*; timore ne, *from fear lest*; not (with imperatives); ne committeret (or. obl.), *let him not, etc.*; nuntios misit ne eos iuvarent, i.e. *to forbid their helping them*; detertere ne conferant, *frighten from contributing*, 17; ne quis, *that no one*. (2) adv., ne ... quidem, *not even*.

-nē, enclitic interrog. particle; nē ... an, *whether ... or*.

**nēc** (nēcquē), conj., *and not, nor*; nec (neque) ... nec (neque), *neither, nor*. [neque.]

**nēcessārio**, adv., *unavoidably*. [necessarius.]

**nēcessārius**, -a, -um, adj., *necessary, pressing, urgent*; tam necessario tempore, *at so urgent a crisis*; related; subst. nēcessārius, -i, m., *kinsman, relation*. [necesse.]

**nēcessītūdo**, -inis, f., *relationship, intimacy, alliance*. [necesse.]

**nec-nē**, conj., *or not* (in second clause of indirect disjunctive question), 50.

**nēco**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *kill, put to death*.

**neg-lēgo**, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *overlook, omit, despise*. [nec-, lego; cp. negotium.]

**nēgo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *deny, refuse; negatse posse, says that he cannot.* [ne, aio.]

**nēgōtium**, -i, n., *business, effort, matter.* [nec, otium.]

**Nemētes**, -um, m. pl., a tribe of Germans in Ariovistus' army who lived east of the Rhine, 51.

**nēmo**, **nemīnem**, m. f., *no one,* [ne, hemo (homo).]

**nēquē**. See nec.

**nē-quīquam**, adv., *in vain.* [nec, quīquam.]

**nervus**, -i, m., *sinew; pl. power,* 20.

**neu**, **nē-vē**, conj., *nor, and not.*

**nex**, **nēcis**, f., *(violent) death.*

**nīhil**, indecl. n., **nīhīlum**, -i, n., *nothing.* [ne, hīlum=*not a bit.*]

**nīhīlō**, abl., *by nothing; nihilo mīnus, none the less.*

**nil** = **nihil**.

**nīsī**, conj., *if not, unless.*

**nītor**, -i, **nīsus** (nixus), v. dep., *rely upon, strive.*

**nōbīlis**, -e, adj., *noble, renowned; as subst., a noble,* 44. [rt. gna; cp. nomen.]

**nōbīlītās**, -ātis, f., *nobility.* [nobilis.]

**nōceo**, -ēre, -ui, -ītum, v. n., *am harmful, injure* (with dat.).

**noctu**, adv., *by night.* [nox.]

**nocturnus**, -a, -um, adj., *nightly, by night.* [nox.]

**nōlo**, **nolle**, **nōlui**, *am unwilling, refuse.* [non, volo.]

**nōmen**, -īnis, n., *name, title; capere nomen, 13, win an evil name; suo nomine, 18, on his own account.* [rt. gna; cp. nobilis.]

**nōmīnātīm**, adv., *by name,* 29. [nomen.]

**nōn**, adv., *not.* [orig. noe-num, i.e. ne, oenum (unum).]

**nōnāgintā**, card. adj., *ninety.*

**non-dum**, adv., *not yet.*

**non-nullus**, -a, -um, adj., *some; usually pl.*

**non-nunquam**, adv., *sometimes.*

**Nōrēia**, -ae, f., town of the Norici, now Neumarkt, in Styria.

**Nōricus**, -a, -um, *Noric, of the Norici; N. ager, later Styria.*

**nos**, pl. of ego, *we.*

**noster**, -tra, -trum, adj., *our, ours; pl. nostri, -orum, m., our men, i.e. the Romans.*

**nōvem**, card. adj., *nine; at c. 8, decem novem, nineteen.*

**nōvus**, -a, -um, adj., *new; novae res, a revolution; novissimum agmen, the rear; novissimi, those in the rear,* 25.

**nox**, -ctis, f., *night; ad multam noctem, late into the night; prima nocte, at nightfall.*

**nūbo**, -ēre, -psi, -ptum, v. n., *veil; (with dat.) nubere viro (of the woman), to marry a man; nuptum*



- collocare, 18, *give in marriage*.
- nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *naked, exposed*; nudo corpore pugnare, i.e. *unprotected by the shield*.
- nullus, -a, -um, adj., *no, none*; subst., *no one* (g. nullius, d. nulli). [ne, ullus.]
- num, interrog. particle (expecting answer *no*, and especially in rhetorical questions); num posse se? *could he, etc.*, 14. (See nam.)
- nūmerus, -i, m., *number, account*; in hostium numero, 28, *in the light of, i.e. as enemies*. [cp. νέμω = *distribute*.]
- nunc, adv., *now*. [cp. νῦν, demonstr. affix -ce; cp. hicce.]
- nunquam, adv., *never*. [ne, umquam.]
- nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *announce, tell, report*. [nuntius.]
- nuntius, -i, m., *messenger, message*. [novi-ventius.]
- nūper, adv., *lately*. [= novi-per; cp. semper.]
- nūtus, -ūs, m., *nod, hint*; ad nutum, 31, *at his nod, according to his will*. [nuo = nod.]
- ob, prep. with acc., *on account of*; ob eam rem (quam ob rem), *on that account*. [cp. ἐπὶ.]
- ob-aerātus, -a, -um, adj., *in debt*; subst., -i, m., *a debtor*, 4. [ob, aes (aeris).]
- ob-īcio, -ēre, ob-īci, ob-iec-tum, v. a., *throw in the way, expose*. [ob, iācio.]
- ob-iectus, -a, -um, part., *lying in the way, exposed to*.
- ob-līviscor, -i, oblītus, v. dep., *forget, with gen.*
- ob-sēcro, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *beseech*. [ob, sacro.]
- ob-servo, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *note, mark, observe*.
- ob-ses, -īdis, m. f., *hostage*. [ob, sedeo.]
- ob-signo, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *seal*.
- ob-stringo, -ēre, -nxi, -stric-tum, v. a., *bind, lay under obligation*.
- ob-tīneo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, v. a., *hold*; quicumque Galliam provinciam obtinet, *whoever should have Gaul as his province*. [teneo.]
- oc-cāsus, -ūs, m., *setting (of the sun), west*. [oc-cīdo.]
- oc-cīdo, -ēre, -di, -sum, v. a., *kill, slay*. [ob, caedo.]
- oc-culto, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *hide*.
- oc-cultus, -a, -um, adj., *secret, hidden*; in occulto, *in secret*.
- oc-cūpo, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *seize, get, occupy, engage*. [ob, cāpio.]
- oc-curro, -ēre, -i, (rarely -cu-curri), -sum, v. n., *meet, oppose, hinder, prevent*. [ob, curro.]

**Ōcēānus**, -i, m., *ocean*, i.e. the Atlantic.

**Ōcēlum**, -i, n., town of the Graioceli in Cisalpine Gaul, now Oult.

**octō**, card. adj., *eight*.

**octō-dēcim**, card. adj., *eighteen*.

**octōgintā**, card. adj., *eighty*.

**ōcūlus**, -i, m., *eye, eyesight*.

**ōdi**, perf. (with pres. signif.), -isse, *hate*.

**of-fendo**, -ēre, -i, -sum, v. a., *stumble against, offend*; offendere animum, *hurt the feelings*. [ob, fendo.]

**of-fensio**, -ōnis, f., *offence*; sine offensione animi, *without hurting the feelings*. [of-fendo.]

**of-ficium**, -i, n., *duty, sense of duty, office; capacity*, 40; ab officio discedere, *forget his allegiance or loyalty*; pro magnis officiis, *in return for great services*. [ob, facio.]

**omnino**, adv., *altogether, at all*; omnino biduum, 23, *only two days*. [omnis.]

**omnis**, -e, adj., *all, every*; omnis Gallia, 1, *Gaul as a whole*.

[ops], **ōpis**, defective, f., *help, aid*; pl. **ōpes**, -um, *resources, wealth, influence*.

**ōportet**, -ēre, -uit, v. impers., *it behoves, is necessary*; with acc. of pers. [opus = need.]

**oppidum**, -i, n., *town, stronghold*, especially a walled town as opposed to vicus

(a village). [ob, pedum = on the plain.]

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, adj., *convenient, suitable*. [ob, portus = before the harbour.]

**op-prīmo**, -ēre, -pressi, -pres-sum, v. a., *overwhelm, crush, overpower*. [ob, prēmo.]

**op-pugno**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *attack*. [ob, pugno.]

**optīmē**, adv., *very well, excellently*.

**optīmus**, -a, -um, adj., *best, most excellent*; highest opinion, 41.

**ōpus**, n., indecl., *need*; si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, 34, *if he wanted anything from Caesar*; si quid opus facto esset, *if there should be any need of their active service*.

**ōpus**, -ēris, n., *work*, especially military works, fortification; operis munitione, 8, *by the strength of the works*.

**ōrātio**, -ōnis, f., *speech, language, words*; habēre orationem, *deliver a speech*. [oro.]

**ordo**, -īnis, m., *arrangement, order, rank*; hence a company led by a centurion, 40, n.

**Orgētōrix**, -īgis, m., a noble of the Helvetii who tried to establish himself as king, but who was detected and brought to trial, and committed suicide.

oriens, part. of orior, *rising* ;  
with or without sol as  
subst., *the rising sun, the  
east.*

orior, -iri, ortus, v. dep.,  
*rise.*

ornāmentum, -i, n., *decora-  
tion.* [orno.]

oro, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a.,  
*beg, pray.*

os-tendo, -ēre, -i, -sum and  
-tum, v. a., *show, point out.*  
[obs, tendo.]

P. = Publius.

pābūlātiō, -onis, f., *foraging.*

pābūlum, -i, n., *food for  
cattle, fodder.* [rt. pa.]

pācātus, -a, -um, part., *sub-  
dued.* [pāco.]

pāco, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a.,  
*pacify, subdue.* [pax.]

paene, adv., *almost.*

pāgus, -i, m., *village, canton.*

pālam, adv., *openly.* [acc.  
of rt. pal, cp. plānus ;  
el-am.]

pālūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, morass.*  
[cp. πηλὸς = *mud, pool.*]

pando, -ēre, -i, passum or  
pansum, v. a., *spread open,  
outstretch hands.* [cp.  
pateo.]

par, pāris, adj., *equal ; a  
match for, 40.*

pāreo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. n.,  
*obey (with dat.).* [intr.  
form of paro, pario = *bring  
forth.*]

pāro, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a.,  
*prepare, get ready, procure ;*  
paratus, *ready.* [cp. pario.]

pars, -tis, f., *part ; direction ;*  
unā ex parte, *in one direc-  
tion ;* qua ex parte, *in which  
respect ;* magna ex parte,  
*to a great extent ;* quarta  
pars,  $\frac{1}{4}$  ; tres partes,  $\frac{3}{4}$ .  
[cp. ἑ-πορ-ov, portio, paro.]

parvus, -a, -um, adj., *small ;*  
parvo pretio, *at a low rate.*  
comp. mīnor, superl. mīnī-  
mus. [cp. parcus, parum.]  
passus, -ūs, m., *step ; pace,*  
i.e. double step of about 5  
feet ; mille passūs, 1000  
paces, i.e. about 1618 yards,  
the Roman mile.

pārens, adj., *open.* [pateo.]

pāteo, -ēre, -ui, v. n., *lie open,  
extend.* [cp. pando.]

pāter, -tris, m., *father.* [rt.  
pa = *feed ;* cp. pa-sco ; πατήρ,  
Vater, *father.*]

pātior, -i, passus, v. dep.,  
*suffer, allow.* [ἑ-παθ-ov.]

paucus, -a, -um, adj., *small ;*  
pl., *few ;* pauca respondēre,  
*answer briefly.* [cp. paulus,  
pauper, paucus.]

paulātim, adv., *little by little.*  
[paulus.]

paulo, adv., *(by) a little, with  
comparative words, e.g.  
maturius paulo, 54, a little  
earlier.* [cp. pau-cus.]

paulum, adv., *a little.* [cp.  
pau-cus.]

pax, pācis, f., *peace.* [rt.  
pac, pag ; cp. paciscor,  
pango.]

pecco, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n.,  
*do wrong, offend.* [rt. pik =  
*be angry ;* cp. piger, pigeo.]

- pēdes**, -ītis, m., *a foot soldier* ;  
pl. *infantry*. [pes.]
- pēior**, -us, adj., *worse*.
- pello**, -ēre, pēpūli, pulsum,  
v. a., *drive, drive back,*  
*defeat.*
- pendo**, -ēre, pēpendi, pen-  
sum, v. a., *weigh* ; then  
*pay*.
- per**, prep. with acc., *through,*  
*by means of, during* ; per  
se, 42, *as far as he was con-*  
*cerned* ; per insidias, 42,  
*treacherously*.
- per-contātio**, -ōnis, f., *asking,*  
*inquiry*. [per-contari.]
- per-dūco**, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a.,  
*bring, lead, carry*.
- pēr-eo**, -ire, -ii, -ītum, v. n.,  
*perish, be slain*.
- per-fācīlis**, -e, adj., *very*  
*easy*.
- per-fēro**, -ferre, -tūli, -latum,  
v. a., *carry through, endure,*  
*submit to, bear*.
- per-ficio**, -ēre, -fēci, -fectum,  
v. a., *accomplish, bring to*  
*an end, finish* ; arrange  
*successfully*, 9. [facio.]
- per-fringo**, -ēre, -frēgi, -frac-  
tum, v. a., *break through,*  
*break in pieces*. [frango.]
- per-fūga**, -ae, m., *deserter*.
- per-fūgio**, -ēre, -fūgi, fūgītum,  
v. n., *flee, desert*.
- pēricūlōsus**, -a, -um, adj., *dun-*  
*gerous*. [periculum.]
- pēricūlum**, -i, n., *trial, proof,*  
*danger*. [cp: porta, portus,  
experior, peritus.]
- pērītus**, -a, -um, adj., *prac-*  
*tised in, skilled in*.
- per-māneo**, -ēre, -mansī, -man-  
sum, v. n., *remain*.
- per-mitto**, -ēre, -mīsi, -missum,  
v. a., *give up, allow*.
- per-mōveo**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mō-  
tum, v. a., *move greatly,*  
*stir up, persuade*.
- per-nīcies**, -ei, f., *destruction,*  
*ruin* ; sine sua perniciē, 36,  
*without coming to utter de-*  
*struction*. [per-nēco.]
- per-pauci**, -ae, -a, adj. plur.,  
*very few*.
- per-pētuo**, adv., *constantly,*  
*in unbroken succession, for*  
*ever*, 31. [perpetuus.]
- perpētus**, -a, -um, adj., *con-*  
*stant, continual, unbroken* ;  
perpetuā vitā, 40, *through-*  
*out his life*. [peto.]
- per-rumpo**, -ēre, -rūpi, -rup-  
tum, v. a., *break through*.
- per-sēquor**, -i, -sēcūtus, v.  
dep., *follow up, pursue,*  
*persecute*.
- per-sēvēro**, -are, -avi, -atum,  
v. a., *persist*.
- per-solvo**, -ēre, -i, -sōlūtum,  
v. a., *pay* ; p. poenas, *pay*  
*the penalty*.
- per-spicio**, -ēre, -spexi, -spec-  
tum, v. a., *see through, dis-*  
*cern clearly*. [spēcio.]
- per-suādeo**, -ēre, -si, -sum, v. n.,  
*persuade* ; mihi persuadētur,  
*I am persuaded* ; p. id eis,  
*persuade them to this*.
- per-terreo**, -ēre, -ui, -ītum,  
v. a., *frighten greatly,*  
*terrify*.
- per-tīnācia**, -ae, f., *obstinacy*.  
[teneo.]

- per-tīneo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, v. n., *reach to, belong to*; pert. ad, 1, *tend to*; eodem pertinet, *it points in the same direction*. [teneo.]
- per-turbo, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *disturb, alarm, scare*.
- per-vēnio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, v. n., *come to, reach, arrive*.
- pes, pēdis, m., *foot*; pedem referre, *to retreat*.
- pēto, -ēre, -īvi and -īi, -ītum, v. a., *seek, ask for, attack, make for*.
- phālanx, -angis, f., *a phalanx*, i.e. a close order of battle; a Greek word transferred to that adopted by the Helvetii, 24, and Germans, 52. [φάλαγξ.]
- pīlum, -i, n., *a heavy spear with shaft about 4 feet long, thrown by Roman legionaries*, 25, 52.
- Pīso, -ōnis, m., (i.) *L. Calpurnius Piso*, Caesar's father-in-law, consul B.C. 58; (ii.) *M. Piso*, consul B.C. 61; (iii.) *Cassius' lieutenant*, B.C. 107.
- plāceo, -ēre, -ui, -ītum, v. n., *please, with dat.*; especially impers., plācet, -uit, *it pleases*; placuit ei, *he determined*.
- plānīcies, -ei, f., *level ground, plain*. [planus.]
- plebs, plēbis, f., plēbes, -ei, f., *common people*.
- plērumquē, adv., *for the most part*. [plerus, rt. ple, cp. plenus.]
- plūrimum, adv., *most, very great*; plurimum posse, *to have the most or very great influence*; so plurimum valere, 17. [rt. ple.]
- plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. used as superl. of multus, *most, very many*. [rt. ple.]
- plūs, adj. used as comp. of multus, and adv., *more*; qui plus possint, *who have more power*. [rt. ple.]
- poena, -ae, f., *punishment*; poenam (or poenas) solvo or persolvo, *pay the penalty*, 12; poenas repeto, *exact vengeance*, 30. [cp. pūnio, paenitet.]
- polliceor, -ēri, -ītus, v. dep., *promise*. [por (= πρὸς), liceor; cp. pro.]
- pōno, -ēre, pōsui, pōsitum, v. a., *place, put, put down, appoint*; in pass., *is situated, lies*, 16; castra ponere, *pitch a camp*. [per (= πρὸς), sino.]
- pons, -ntis, m., *bridge*; p. in Arari, *on the Arar*. [akin to path.]
- pōposci, redupl. perf. of posco.
- pōpūlātiō, -ōnis, f., *ravaging*, 15. [populor.]
- pōpūlor, -ari, -atus, v. dep., *lay waste, ravage, agros, fines*. [populus = *spread a multitude over a place*.]
- pōpūlus, -i, m., *people*. [rt. ple; cp. pleo, plenus.]
- por-rigo, -ēre, -rexi, -rectum, v. a., *stretch, extend*. [pro, rēgo.]

- porto**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *carry*.
- portōrium**, -i, n., in pl., *customs, toll*, 18. [portus = *harbour*.]
- posco**, -ĕre, pōposci, v. a., *demand*. [cp. prēcōr.]
- possessio**, -ōnis, f., *possession*. [possideo.]
- pos-sideo**, -ĕre, -sēdi, -sessum, v. a., *have, possess*. [por (= πρὸς), sēdeo.]
- pos-sum**, posse, pōtui, v. n., *am able, can*; multum or plus posse, *to have much or more influence*; quam maximis potest itineribus, *by the longest possible marches*; largiter posse, 18, *be very powerful*. [pōtis, sum.]
- post**, adv., *after*; biduo post, *two days after*; prep. with acc., *after, post eius mortem*, 5. [cp. pone.]
- post-eā**, adv., *after, afterwards*. [Either post ēā (orig. eā), or post ea(m rem).]
- post-ea-quam**, conj., *after that*, 31.
- postērus**, -a, -um, adj., *subsequent*; postērus dies, *the next day*; pl., posteri, *descendants*. [post.]
- post-quam**, conj., *after that*.
- postrīdie**, adv., *on the next day*; postrīdie eius diei, *the next day*. [locative of posterus dies.]
- postulātum**, -i, n., *a demand*. [postulo.]
- postūlo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *demand; claim*, 31; *require*, 54. [posco.]
- pōtens**, -ntis, part. and adj., *powerful*. [possum.]
- pōtentātus**, -ūs, m., *political supremacy*, 31. [potens.]
- pōtentia**, -ae, f., *power*. [potens.]
- pōtestas**, -ātis, f., *power, opportunity*; sui potestatem facere, *give an opportunity of approaching him*, 40. [potis.]
- pōtior**, -iri, -itus, v. dep., *gain possession of*, with abl. or gen. [cp. potis, possum.]
- pōtius**, comp. adv., *rather*. [potis.]
- prae**, prep. with abl., *before, in comparison with*. [cp. pro, prior, porro, primus.]
- prae-cāveo**, -ĕre, -cāvi, -cautum, v. n., *guard against, take precautions*.
- prae-cēdo**, -ĕre, -cessi, -cessum, v. a., *go before, surpass*.
- prae-cīpio**, -ĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. a., *order, instruct*. [capio.]
- prae-cīpūē**, adv., *especially*. [prae-cipio.]
- prae-dīco**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *assert, proclaim*; multa praedicavit, 44, *talked a great deal*. [dicare.]
- prae-fectus**, -i, m., *prefect*; general term for an officer, esp. a cavalry officer. [prae-ficio.]
- prae-ficio**, -ĕre, -fēci, -fectum, v. a., *set over, place in command of*. [facio.]

- prae-mitto, -ĕre, -mīsi, -mis-sum, v. a., *send forward*.  
 praemium, -i, n., *reward, prize*. [prae, ĕmo = *got before others*.]  
 prae-opto, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *choose in preference, prefer*.  
 prae-pōno, -ĕre, -pōsui, -pōsitum, v. a., *set over*.  
 prae-scribo, -ĕre, -psi, -ptum, v. a., *command, order; limit, 40*.  
 prae-scriptum, -i, n., *order*.  
 prae-sens, -ntis, adj., *present; in praesentia, 15, for the present*. [praesum.]  
 prae-sentia, -ae, f., *presence*. [praesens.]  
 prae-sertim, adv., *especially*. [prae, sĕro.]  
 prae-sidium, -i, n., *guard, garrison, defence; praesidio esse, 25, to defend, protect*. [prae, sedeo.]  
 prae-sto, -stāre, -stiti, v. n., *stand before, be better; hence excel; praestat, it is better*.  
 prae-sum, -esse, -fui, v. n., *be before, be in command of; summo magistratui praesesse, 16, to hold the chief magistracy*.  
 prae-ter, prep. with acc., *beyond, past, besides, in addition to, except*. [prae; demonstr. suffix -ter, cp. inter, subter, propter.]  
 praetĕr-eā, adv., *further, besides, moreover*. [praeter eā (orig. eā) or praeter ea (m rem).]  
 praeter-itus, -a, -um, adj., *past*. [praeter-eo.]  
 praeter-quam, adv., *beyond, beside; except, followed by quod, 5 n*.  
 praetor, -ōris, m., *praetor, a Roman magistrate*. In early times there were two, viz., p. urbanus, who had authority in law matters between Romans, and p. peregrinus, when a foreigner came into the dispute. In later times there were many more. Legatus pro praetore, 21, 34, *adjutant with praetorian powers*. [= praetor from praeeo.]  
 praetōrius, -a, -um, adj., *praetorian; porta praetoria, the gate of the camp facing the enemy; praetoria cohors, 40 n., body-guard*.  
 prĕhendo, -ĕre, -i, -sum, v. a., *grasp, take*. [prae, hendo.]  
 prĕmo, -ĕre, pressi, pressum, v. a., *press, vex, harass*.  
 prendo = prĕhendo.  
 prĕtium, -i, n., *price*.  
 [prex], precem, defect., used by Caesar only in pl., f., *prayer, entreaty, petition*.  
 prīdiē, adv., *the day before; with gen., pridie eius diei, the day before that day*. [locative pri- (cp. pridem, prior), dies.]  
 prīmo, adv., prīmum, adv., *at first, firstly; quam primum, as soon as possible*.  
 prīmus, -a, -um, superl. adj., *first, principal; primā luce,*

- at daybreak*; *primā nocte, at nightfall*; comp. *prior*. [cp. *prae*.]
- prin-ceps**, -cīpis, adj., *first, chief*; *ea princeps persolvit, it was the first to pay*; as subst., *a chief*. [primus, capio.]
- principātus**, -ūs, m., *first place, leadership*. [princeps.]
- pristīnus**, -a, -um, adj., *former, ancient*. [cp. *priscus*, for *prius-tinus*; so *magis* = *magius*.]
- prius**, comp. adv., *before*; *prius quam*, conj., *before that*. [prae.]
- prīvātīm**, adv., *apart from the State, as private individuals*.
- prīvatus**, -a, -um, adj., *private*. [privo = *deprive*.]
- prō**, prep. with abl., *before, for, in behalf of, in proportion to, in the place of, in accordance with, in return for*; *pro castris, in front of the camp*; *pro his, on their behalf*; *pro multitudine hominum, 51, considering their numbers or population*; *pro magnis officiis, in return for great services*, *pro praetore, serving as praetor*; *pro viso, 22, as if seen*; *pro vallo, to serve as a rampart*.
- prōbo**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *approve, prove*. [probus.]
- prō-cēdo**, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum, v. a., *advance*.
- Pro-cillus**, -i, m., *Gaius Valerius Proculus*, a Gaul and great friend of Caesar, sent by him as ambassador to Ariovistus, by whom he was detained but afterwards rescued, 19, 47, 53.
- prō-curro**, -ēre, -i, and -cūcurri, -sum, v. n., *run forward, advance*.
- pro-d-eo**, -ire, -ii, -itum, v. n., *come forth, advance*.
- prō-do**, -ēre, -didi, -ditum, v. a., *give up, transmit, hand down, betray*.
- prō-dūco**, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *lead forth, bring out, prolong*.
- proelium**, -i, n., *battle*. [perhaps = *pro-duillum*.]
- prōfectio**, -ōnis, f., *setting out*. [proficiscor.]
- prōfectus**, -a, -um, part. of proficiscor.
- prōficio**, -ēre, -fēci, -fectum, v. n. and a., *advance, bring about, effect*; *viam proficisse, 38, had performed a march*. [facio.]
- prōficiscor**, -i, prōfectus, v. dep. n., *set out*. [lit. *make forth*; cp. *facezzo*.]
- pro-fūgio**, -ēre, -fūgi, -fūgitum, v. n., *escape*.
- prō-grēdior**, -i, -gressus, v. dep., *step forth, advance, proceed*. [gradior, gradus.]
- prō-hībeo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. a., *prevent, hinder, restrain; cut off from, 49*. Used by Caesar, Cicero, and Livy, with the infin., not with quominus. [habeo.]



Quintus, -i, m., Roman praenomen.

qui-que, *and who*.

quis, quid (qui, quae, quod), interrog. pron., *who? which? what?*

quis, quā, quid, indef. pron., *any*; si quis, *if any one*; ne quis, *that no one*; quid auxilii, *any help*.

quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron., *any one (at all)*; nec quisquam, *and no one*.

quisquē, quaeque, quicque (quodque), indef. pron., *each*; si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, 45, *if in every case respect ought to be paid to antiquity*.

quō, adv., *whither, where*; indef., *anywhither, anywhere*; with compar., *in order that*.

quōd, conj., *because, in that, whereas*; quod si, *even if, but if*; quod temptassent, *the fact of their having tried*; quod commodo rei publicae facere posset, 35, n., *as far as he could do it consistently with the advantage of the state*.

quō-mīnus, conj., *by which the less, that not*; recusare quominus essent, *refuse to be*.

quōniam, conj., *since, with indic.* [quom (quum) iam.]

quōque, adv., *also*.

quōt-annīs, adv., *every year, yearly*.

quōtīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., *daily*. [quotidie.]

quōtīdiē, adv., *daily, day by day*. [quot, dies.]

quōtīēs or quōtīens, adv., *how often? or as often as*. [quot.]

quum, quom or cum, relative conj. of time, *when, with indic. and subj.*; causal, *since, seeing that, always with subj.*

rādix, -icis, f., *root*; rādīces montis, *the base or spurs of the mountain*, 38. [cp. ramus.]

rāpīna, -ae, f., *plunder*. [rapio.]

rātio, ōnis, f., *calculation, method, plan, design, condition, reason*; ea ratione, *on these grounds*. [reor, ratus.]

rātis, -is, f., *ship, raft*. [cp. remus, tri-remis, etc.]

Raurīci, -orum, m. pl., a Celtic people on the S. bank of the Rhine from the Aar to Basel.

rēcens, -ntis, adj., *fresh, recent*. [rē-; cp. candeo, candor.]

rēcept-, supine stem of recipio.

rē-cīpio, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. a., *get back, receive, withdraw, admit*; se recipere, *betake oneself back, withdraw, retreat*. [capio.]

rē-cūso, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *refuse*; v. n., *de stipendio recusare*, 44, n. [causa.]

- rēda**, -ae, f., *chariot*, 51  
**red-do**, -ēre, -dīdi, -dītum, v. a., *give back, render*.  
**rēd-eo**, -ire, -ii, -ītum, v. n., *go back*. [The orig. form of re- was red-; cp. red-do, rel-latus, rel-liquiae, red-duco.]  
**rēd-īgo**, -ēre, -ēgi, -actum, v. a., *bring back, reduce*; in provinciam redigere, 45, *reduce to the condition of a province*. [ago.]  
**rēd-īmo**, -ēre, -ēmi, -emptum, v. a., *buy, redempta habere*, 18, *hold in contract*. [emo.]  
**red-intēgro**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *renew*.  
**rēd-ītio**, -ōnis, f., *return*, r. dōmum, *return home*. [red-ire.]  
**re-dūco**, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *lead back, bring back*.  
**rē-fēro**, -ferrē, rettūli, rēlātum, v. a., *bring back, take back, report*; pedem r., *retreat*; hanc gratiam referre, *make this return*.  
**rēgio**, -ōnis, f., *direction, region*. [rego.]  
**regnum**, -i, n., *royal power; chieftaincy*. See iii. 4, n. [rex.]  
**rē-īcio**, -ēre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. a., *throw back, throw away, beat back*; ne pila reicerent, *not to throw back, i.e. in answer*. [re, iācio.]  
**reiect-**, supine stem of rē-īcio.  
**relāt-**, supine stem of rēfēro.
- rē-linguo**, -ēre, -līqui, -lictum, v. a., *leave behind, abandon, leave*. [linguo, cp. λείπω.]  
**rē-līquus**, -a, -um, adj., *remaining, rest of*; nihil est reliquū, *nothing is left*; in reliquum tempus, 20, *for the future*. [re-linguo.]  
**rē-māneo**, -ēre, -nsi, -nsum, v. n., *remain behind*.  
**Remi**, -orum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe of Gallia Belgica, who have given their name to modern Rheims.  
**rē-mīniscor**, -i, v. dep., *call to mind*, with gen. [cp. memor.]  
**rē-mitto**, -ēre, -mīsi, -missum, v. a., *send back, relax*.  
**rē-mōveo**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, v. a., *remove, send away*; remotus, 31, *far distant from*.  
**rē-mūnēror**, -ari, -atūs, v. dep., *recompense*. [munus.]  
**re-nuntio**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *bring back word, report*. [nuntius.]  
**rē-pello**, -ēre, reppūli, repulsum, v. a., *drive back*.  
**rēpentē**, adv., *suddenly*. [rēpens = sudden.]  
**rēpentīnus**, -a, -um, adj., *sudden*. [rēpentē.]  
**rē-pērio**, -ire, reppēri, rēpertum, v. a., *find, discover*; salutem reppererunt, 53, *reached a place of safety*. [pārio = procure.]  
**re-pēto**, -ēre, -ivi or -ii, -ītum, v. a., *demand back, claim as due, exact (vengeance)*.

- rep-pŭli, perf. of rēpello.  
 rē-praesento, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *do at once*, 40. [*bring back to the present from the future.*]  
 rē-prēhendo, -ēre, -i, -sum, v. a., *blame*. [prehendo.]  
 rē-pŭdio, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *despise, reject*. [pudet.]  
 rē-pugno, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n., *stand in the way, oppose*.  
 re-puls-, supine stem of rēpello.  
 res, rei, f., *thing, matter, affair, fact, reason*; pl. *fortunes*, 14; according to the context to be translated by various words, e.g. ea res, *this conspiracy*, c. 4; novis rebus studebat, *was anxious for a revolution*; de re publica, *about state matters*, 34; res militaris, *military tactics*; res frumentaria, *the corn supply*; r. communis, *common interests*; res secundiores, *greater prosperity*; res familiaris, 18, *private property*; florentissimis rebus, 30, *though their power was at its height*. [cp. reor.]  
 re-scindo, -ēre, -scīdi, -scis-sum, v. a., *cut away, break down*.  
 re-scisco, -ēre, -scivi or -scii, -scītum, v. a., *ascertain*.  
 re-scribo, -ēre, -psi, -ptum, v. a., *enrol afresh, transfer*.  
 rē-servo, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *keep back, reserve*.  
 rē-sisto, -ēre, -stīti, -stītum, v. n., *resist, stand up against*.  
 re-spondeo, -ēre, -i, -sum, v. a., *answer*; pauca respondit, *answered briefly*.  
 re-sponsum, -i, n., *answer*. [respondeo.]  
 res-publica, rei publicae, f., *common weal, state*.  
 re-spuo, -ēre, -i, v. a., *refuse with scorn, reject*, 42.  
 re-stītuō, -ēre, -ui, -ūtum, v. a., *restore, replace*. [statuo.]  
 rē-tīneo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, v. a., *restrain, detain, maintain*. [tēneo.]  
 rē-vello, -ēre, -i, -vulsum, v. a., *pull down, tear away*.  
 (rē-vertēre), -i, -sum, *return*; in present tenses revertor, dep., is found.  
 rex, rēgis, m., *king*.  
 Rhēnus, -i, m., *the Rhine*.  
 Rhōdānus, -i, m., *the Rhone*, rises in Switzerland and flows into the Gulf of Lyon after a course of about 500 miles.  
 rīpa, -ae, f., *bank (of a river)*. [cp. rivus.]  
 rōgo, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *ask, request, beg*.  
 Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.  
 Rōmāni, -orum, m. pl., *Romans*.  
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman*.  
 rōtā, -ae, f., *wheel*. [cp. rōtundus.]  
 rursus, adv., *again*. [reversus.]

Rūtēni, -orum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe defeated by Q. Fabius Maximus, B.C. 121.

saepē, adv., *often*; saepius, 32, *again and again, repeatedly*. [cp. saepes = a thick hedge.]

saepe-nūmēro, adv., *often, frequently*.

sālūs, -ūtis, f., *safety, preservation*; salutem repperunt, 53, *reached a place of safety*. [cp. servare, salvus.]

sancio, -ire, -nxi, -nctum, v. a., *confirm, ratify*; iure iurando inter se sanxerunt, 30, *they bound each other by solemn oath*. [cp. sacer.]

sānītās, -ātis, f., *soundness*; in sanitatem reverti, 42, *return to a sound state of mind*. [sanus.]

Santōnes, -um, m. pl., a Celtic people on the W. coast of Gaul above the Garonne.

sarcīna, -ae, f., *bundle*; especially in pl., the soldier's baggage, carried by each man, and consisting of his arms, corn for 14 days, entrenching-stakes, saw, axe, spade, basket, cooking implement, in all weighing about 70 lbs. [sarcio.]

sātis, adv., *enough*; satis causae, *sufficient cause*; s. habere, *to be satisfied with*. [= satius, as magis = magius, nimis = nimius.]

sātis-fācio, -ēre, -fēcī, -factum, v. a., *satisfy, apologize*.

sātis-factio, -ōnis, f., *satisfaction, apology*. [satisfacio.]

sātius, comp. adv., *better*.

scēlus, -ēris, n., *wickedness, crime*.

scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge, acquaintance with*. [scio.]

scio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. a., *know*.

scribo, -ēre, -psi, -ptum, v. a., *write*. [lit. dig.]

scūtum, -i, n., *shield*. [rt. scu = cover.]

se or sese, reflex. pron., *self, him-, her-, it-self, them-selves*.

sēcūs. See secus.

sēcrēto, adv., *secretly*. [se, cerno.]

sē-cum = cum se,

sēcundum, prep. with acc., *next, along, according to, after*; secundum ea, *next to those considerations*, 33. [secundus.]

sēcundus, -a, -um, adj., *following, second, prosperous*; secundae res, *prosperity*; res secundiores, 14, *greater prosperity*. [sequor.]

sēcus, adv., *otherwise*; comp. secius, nihilo secius, *none the less, nevertheless*, 49. [rt. sec; cp. sequor.]

sēd, conj., *but*. [conn. with suus, lit. *by itself, apart*.]

sē-dēcim, card. adj., *sixteen*.

sēdes, -is, f., *abode, dwelling, settlement*. [cp. sēdeo, sēdare, sēdile, sella; Engl. seat, sit.]

- sē-dītiōsus, -a, -um, adj.,  
*seditionous*. [sē, do.]  
 Sedusii, -orum, m. pl., a Ger-  
 man tribe between the Main  
 and Neckar, forming part of  
 the army of Ariovistus, 51.  
 Segusiavi, -orum, m. pl., a  
 Celtic people W. of the  
 Rhone, near Lyon, clients  
 of the Aedui, 10.  
 sēmēl, adv., *once*. [rt. sam  
 = *one*; cp. sim-ilis, sim-  
 plex, sem-per.]  
 sēmentis, -is, f., *a sowing*, 3.  
 [sero.]  
 sempēr, adv., *always*. [cp.  
 semel.]  
 sēnātus, -ūs, m., *a senate*,  
 esp. *the senate* at Rome;  
 senatus consultum, -i, n.,  
*a decree of the senate*.  
 [senex.]  
 senex, sēnis, m., *an old man*;  
 adj., *aged*. [cp. senectus,  
 senatus, senilis.]  
 sēni, -ae, -a, distrib. numeral,  
*six each*; *six miles each*  
*day*, 15. [sex.]  
 sententia, -ae, f., *opinion*,  
*vote*; in eam sententiam  
 quare, 45, *to the effect that*,  
*to explain why*. [sentio.]  
 sentio, -ire, sensi, sensum, v.  
 a., *perceive*.  
 sē-pārātīm, adv., *separately*.  
 [sē-paro = *disjoin*.]  
 septem, card. adj., *seven*.  
 Septen-triones, -um, m. pl.  
 (also sing., 1, § 7), *the seven*  
*stars of the Wain*; hence  
*the North*. [trio, cp. traho,  
*plough oxen*.]  
 septīmus, -a, -um, adj.,  
*seventh*.  
 sēpultūra, -ae, f., *burial*.  
 [sepult-, supine stem of  
 sepelio.]  
 Sēquāna, -ae, f., *the Seine*.  
 Sēquānus, -i, m., *one of the*  
*Sequani*, a strong Celtic  
 tribe dwelling between  
 Mount Jura and the Saône  
 (chief town Vesontio, i.e.  
 Besançon), who had invited  
 Ariovistus across the Rhine,  
 but being spoiled by him  
 requested Caesar's help.  
 Sēquānus, -a, -um, adj., *of*  
*the Sequani*.  
 sēquor, -i, sēcutus, v. dep.,  
*follow, pursue*; *befall*, 4.  
 [cp. secundus.]  
 servilis, -e, adj., *servile*; s.  
 tumultus, *the slaves' revolt*,  
 40, 5. [servus.]  
 servītūs, -ūtis, f., *slavery*.  
 [servus.]  
 servus, -i, m., *slave*.  
 sē-sē = se.  
 seu = sive.  
 sex, card. adj., *six*.  
 sexāgintā, card. adj., *sixty*.  
 sex-centi, -ae, -a, card. adj.,  
*six hundred*.  
 sex-dēcim, card. adj., *sixteen*.  
 si, conj., *if*; quod si, *now or*  
*but if*; si non (minus), *if*  
*not*; si possent, *to try if*  
*they could*.  
 sibi, dat. of se.  
 sic, adv., *so, thus*; sic ... ut,  
*so that* (= si-cē, i.e. si loca-  
 tive of rt. sa; ce demonstr.  
 suffix).

- sic-ut, adv., *just as*.  
 signum, -i, n., *sign, signal*; *ensign* of the legions, after the time of Marius a silver eagle; signa ferre (inferre), *to advance*; signa conversa intulerunt, 25, *faced about and advanced*.  
 silva, -ae, f., *wood*. [akin to, but not derived from, ὕλη.]  
 simūl, adv., *at the same time*. [cp. semel.]  
 simūlātiō, -ōnis, f., *pretence, pretext, feint*. [simulo.]  
 simūlo, -āre, -avi, -atum, v. a., *pretend, feign*. [similis.]  
 sin, conj., *but if, if however*. [= si-ne.]  
 sinē, prep. with abl., *without*. [si (demonstrative instrumental), ne (negative).]  
 singūli, -ae, -a, adj., *one at a time, single*; in singulos annos, *year by year*; quos singuli singulos delegerant, *whom they had each severally chosen*, singulis legionibus singulos legatos praefecit, 52, *placed one lieutenant in command of each legion*. [cp. semel.]  
 sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on the left*. [perhaps cp. sinus (=fold of toga); with double comp. ending is and ter, cp. mag-is-ter, min-is-ter.]  
 sinistra, -ae, f., *the left (hand)*. [sinister.]  
 si-quis, -qua, -quid, indef. pron., *if any*.
- si-vē, seu, *whether, or if*; sive (seu) ... sive (seu), *whether ... or (if)*.  
 sōcer, -ēri, m., *father-in-law*.  
 sōcius, -i, m., *comrade, ally*. [cp. sequor.]  
 sol, sōlis, m., *sun*. [cp. sēr-ēnus.]  
 solum, adv., *only, alone*; non solum ... sed (etiam), *not only ... but also*, 12, 20. [sōlus.]  
 solum, -i, n., *soil, ground*; solum agri, 11, *the mere soil*. [cp. sōlidus.]  
 sōlus, -a, -um, (gen. -ius, dat. -i), *only, alone*. [orig. = sollus, whole; cp. salus.]  
 sōror, -ōris, f., *sister*.  
 sors, -rtis, f., *lot*. [sero; cp. fors, fero.]  
 spātium, -i, n., *space; interval* (whether of time or space), *distance*.  
 spēcies, -ei, f., *appearance, sight*; ad speciem, 51, *to make a show*. [spēcio.]  
 specto, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *look, face; regard*, 45, n.; Aquitania spectat inter, i.e. *faces S.-W.*, 1, § 7. [freq. of obsolete specio.]  
 spēcūlor, -ari, -atus, v. dep., *watch, spy*. [specula = a watch-tower.]  
 spēro, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a. and n., *hope for, hope*. [spes.]  
 spēs, -ei, f., *hope*; habere spem, *to entertain a hope*; ea spe deiecti, 8, *foiled of that hope*, magnam in spem

- venire, 42, *to entertain great hopes.*
- spīritus, -ūs, m., *breath, airs; tantos sibi spiritus sumere, 33, to assume such airs. [spiro = breathe.]*
- spontē, meā (tuā, suā), *of my (thy, etc.) own accord; sponte sua, 9, by their own resources. [abl. of obsolete spons, cp. spondeo; lit. pledging oneself to do a thing.]*
- stātim, adv., *on the spot, immediately. [sto.]*
- stātuo, -ēre, -ui, -ūtum, v. a., *set up, resolve, deem, decide; graviter statuere in aliquem, to take strong measures against; non expectandum sibi statuit, decided that he ought not to wait. [sto.]*
- stīpendiārius, -a, -um, adj., *tributary; subst., m., a tributary. [stipendium.]*
- stīpendium, -i, n., *tribute; s. pendēre, pay tribute. [stips, pendo.]*
- stūdeo, -ēre, -ui, v. n., *am zealous, give attention to, desire anxiously; s. novis rebus, aim at a revolution.*
- stūdium, -i, n., *zeal, earnestness, regard, desire; s. in populum Romanum, affection for the R. people.*
- sub, prep. (i.) with acc., *under (of motion); sub iugum mittere, send under the yoke; sub primam nostram aciem successerunt, came up close to our front line. (ii.) with abl., under; sub monte, at the foot of the mountain; sub septentrionibus, 16, towards the N.*
- sub-dūco, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *draw off, draw up.*
- sub-eo, -ire, -ii, -itum, v. n., *go under, undergo, come up, approach; subire periculum, 5.*
- sūb-īcio, -ēre, -iēcī, -iectum, v. a., *throw up, expose, bring under; discharge from below, 26. [sub, iācio.]*
- sub-iectus, -a, -um, adj., *lying under, subjected to. [sūb-īcio.]*
- sūbītō, adv., *suddenly. [sub-eo.]*
- sub-lāt-, supine stem of tollo.
- sub-lēvo, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *raise up, aid.*
- sub-mīnistro, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *supply, furnish. [manus.]*
- sub-mōveo. See summoveo.
- sub-sīdium, -i, n., *succour, aid. [sedeo.]*
- sub-sisto, -ēre, -stīti, v. n., *make a stand, 15.*
- sub-sum, -esse, -fui, v. n., *be near.*
- sub-trāho, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *withdraw, draw off.*
- sub-vēho, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *carry up (stream), 16.*
- suc-cēdo, -ēre, -ssi, -ssum, v. a., *succeed, come next; succedo sub, come up close to, advance up to. [sub, cedo.]*
- Suebi, -orum, m. pl., *a large*

- German tribe, living near Suabia and the Black Forest.
- Suebus**, -a, -um, adj., of the Suebi, Suebian.
- Sulla**, -ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla* (B.C. 138-78), champion of the aristocracy against Marius, and for some years dictator at Rome.
- sum**, esse, fui, v. n., *am*; *populo Romano est, the Roman people has*; *Gallia est Ariovisti, Gaul belongs to Ariovistus*; *futurum esse ut, 20, etc., the result would be that.*
- summa**, -ae, f., *sum, the whole, chief management*; s. belli, 41, *the conduct of the war.*
- sum-mōveo** or **sub-mōveo**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, v. a., *drive off from, drive back.* [sub, moveo].
- summus**, -a, -um, adj., *highest, chief, greatest, utmost, most important*; *summa spes, very great hope*; *summum iugum montis, the mountain's highest ridge*; *summus mons, the top of the mountain*; *res summae, 34, matters of the highest importance.*
- sūmo**, -ēre -psi, -ptum, v. a., *take, choose, assume*; s. supplicium, *inflict punishment.* [sub, emo.]
- sumpt-**, supine stem of *sumo*.
- sumptus**, -ūs, m., *expense, cost.*
- sūperbē**, adv., *proudly, arrogantly.* [superbus, super.]
- sūpērior**, -us, comp. adj., *higher, better, former*; e loco superiore, *from a vantage ground.* [superus.]
- sūpēro**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a. and n., *overcome, pass beyond, prevail, survive.* [super.]
- sūper-sum**, -esse, -fui, v. n., *remain, be left.*
- sūpērus**, -a, -um, adj., *above*; de supero, *from above.* [super.]
- sup-pēto**, -ēre, -ivior -ii, -itum, v. n., *be at hand.* [sub, peto.]
- sup-plīciter**, adv., *in a suppliant manner.* [supplex, sub, plīco = bend the knees.]
- sup-plīcium**, -i, n., *punishment*; s. *sumere, inflict punishment*; *supplicio afficere, punish.*
- sup-porto**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *carry up, bring up to; bring up-country, 39.* [sub, porto.]
- suprā**, adv., *above*; prep. with acc., *above.*
- sus-cīpio**, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum, v. a., *undertake.* [subs (i.e. sub), capio.]
- su-spīcio**, -ēre, -spexi, -spectum, v. a., *suspect.* [sub, spēcio.]
- sus-pīcio**, -ōnis, f., *suspicion*; pl., *grounds of suspicion, 19, etc.* [prob. contr. from suspicitio, and often spelt suspītio.]



- sus-pīcor, -ari, -atus, v. dep.,  
*suspect.*  
 sus-tīneo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum,  
 v. a., *bear, support, sustain,*  
*withstand, check, restrain.*  
 [subs = sub, teneo.]  
 suus, -a, -um, possess. adj.,  
*his-, her-, its-, their-own;*  
 plural subst. sui, *his (their)*  
*men.*  
 T. = Titus.  
 tābernācŭlum, -i, n., *tent.*  
 [taberna = *hut.*]  
 tābŭla, -ae, f., *tablet.* [rt. ta  
 = *stretch;* cp. taberna,  
 tenus.]  
 tāceo, -ēre, ui, -itum, v. n.,  
*be silent.*  
 tācītus, -a, -um, *silent.*  
 [taceo.]  
 tam, adv., *so.* [acc. f. of  
 demonstr. root ta; cp.  
 tum, tamen.]  
 tam-diu, adv., *so long.*  
 tāmen, adv., *yet, nevertheless,*  
*at anyrate.* [cp. tam,  
 tum.]  
 tām-etsī, conj., *although.*  
 tandem, adv., *at last, at*  
*length;* in questions, *pray.*  
 [tam, dem (demonstr.), *just*  
*so far.*]  
 tanto ōpĕrĕ or tantōpĕrĕ, adv.,  
*so greatly.*  
 tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so*  
*much;* tanti esse, *to be of*  
*such value or weight.*  
 tectum, -i, n., *roof, house.*  
 [tego = *cover.*]  
 tēlum, -i, n., *weapon for*  
*throwing, bolt, shaft, dart;*  
 iacĕre, mittere, cōn-icĕre.  
 [= *texlum;* cp. τῆλον.]  
 tēmĕrārius, -a, -um, adj.,  
*rash, heedless, reckless.*  
 [temere.]  
 tēmĕrĕ, adv., *rashly, at ran-*  
*dom.* [lit. *darkly;* cp.  
 timor.]  
 tempĕrantia, -ae, f., *modera-*  
*tion.* [temperans, tem-  
 pero.]  
 tempĕro, -are, -avi, -atum, v.  
 n., *refrain;* non tempero  
 mihi quin exeam, 33, *do not*  
*refrain from going forth.*  
 [tempus.]  
 tempto, -are, -avi, -atum, v.  
 a. and n., *attempt, try.*  
 [tendo.]  
 tempus, -ōris, n., *time; crisis,*  
 16. [probably *a section,*  
 temno = *cut.*]  
 tĕneo, -ēre, -ui, -tum, v. a.,  
*hold, restrain;* memoria t.,  
*remember;* lacrimas t., *re-*  
*strain one's tears.* [rt. tan =  
*stretch;* cp. tendo, tenuis,  
 tener, tenor, tenus.]  
 tĕr, adv., *three times, thrice.*  
 tergum, -i, (tergus, -ōris), n.,  
*back;* tergum vertere, *turn*  
*and flee.*  
 terra, -ae, f., *earth, land,*  
*ground.*  
 terrĕnus, -a, -um, adj., *of*  
*earth.* [terra.]  
 tertius, -a, -um, ordinal adj.,  
*third;* tertia pars,  $\frac{1}{3}$ .  
 testāmentum, -i, n., *will.*  
 [testis.]  
 testīmōnium, -i, n., *witness,*  
*evidence.* [testis.]

testis, -is, m. f., *a witness.*

Teutōni, -orum, (Teutones, -um), m. pl., a powerful German tribe, who with the Cimbri about B.C. 113 began to ravage Gaul, but were cut to pieces by Marius at Aquae Sextiae, B.C. 102; cc. 33, 40.

Tīgūrīni, -orum, m. pl., the Tigurini, one of the four cantons of Switzerland, 12 Introd., p. xviii.

Tīgūrīnus, -a, -um, adj., *Tigurine*; pagus, 12.

tīmeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. a., *fear.*

tīmīdus, -a, -um, adj., *fearful, timid.* [timeo.]

tīmōr, -ōris, m., *fear.* [timeo.]

Tītus, -i, m., Roman praenomen.

tōlĕro, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *bear, endure, support.* [rt. tol; cp. tollo, tuli.]

tollo, -ere, sustūli, sublatum, v. a., *raise, lift up, elate, remove, do away with.* [See tolero.]

Tōlōsātes, -ium, m. pl., inhabitants of Tolosa in the Province, now Toulouse, 10.

tot, indecl., *so many.*

tōtīdem, indecl., *just so many.* [tot, and demonstr. suffix dem; cp. idem.]

tōtus, -a, -um (g. -ius, d. -i), adj., *the whole, all*; t. mons, *the whole mountain.*

trā-do, -ēre, -dīdi, -dītum, v. a., *deliver up, hand down, betray.* [trans, do.]

trā-dūco, see transduco.

trāgŭla, -ae, f., *a spear, lance* of the Gauls and Spaniards, thrown by means of a strap, 26.

trāho, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *draw, drag.*

trā-no, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *swim across.*

trans, prep. with acc., *across.*

trans-dūco or trā-dūco, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *lead across.*

trans-eo, -ire, -ii, -itum, v. n., *cross*; vado transitur, 6, *can be forded.*

trans-fīgo, -ēre, -xi, -xum, v. a., *pierce.*

trans-nāto, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n., *swim across.*

trans-porto, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *carry across.*

trēcenti, -ae, -a, card. adj., *three hundred.* [tres, centum.]

trē-dēcim, card. adj., *thirteen.*

trēs, tria, card. adj., *three.*

Trēvēri, -orum, m. pl., a people of Gallia Belgica on the Mosel, with chief town Augusta Treverorum, now Trier, c. 37.

Tribōces, -um (also -i, -orum), m. pl., a German people on the Rhine near Strassburg, 51.

tribūnus, -i, m., *tribune*; especially tribuni militum, officers in the Roman army, young men of rank, 6 to each legion, with especial charge of the discipline, etc., commanding each two

- months at a time, c. 39.  
[tribus = *a tribe*.]  
tribuo, -ere, -i, -ūtum, v. a.,  
assign, ascribe. [tribus.]  
tri-duum, -i, n., space of three  
days. [tres, dies.]  
trīgintā, card. adj., thirty.  
trīni, -ae, -a, three each, with  
words used only (or in a  
different sense) in pl., three;  
trinae catenae, 53, threefold  
fetters.  
tri-plex, -plicis, adj., three-  
fold, triple. [ter, plico;  
cp. duplex.]  
tristis, -e, adj., sad, sorrow-  
ful. [cp. terreo.]  
tristitia, -ae, f., sadness.  
[tristis.]  
Tulingi, -orum, m. pl., a Ger-  
man people in S. Baden,  
5, 25, 28, 29.  
tum, adv., then. [See tam.]  
tūmultus, -ūs, m., disturbance,  
outbreak, especially a rising  
in Cisalpine Gaul (or Italy);  
servilis tumultus, the revolt  
of the slaves, 40, n. [tumeo  
= swell.]  
tūmulus, -i, m., mound, heap.  
[tumeo = swell.]  
turpis, -e, adj., base, disgrace-  
ful.  
ūbi, conj. (i.) of time, when;  
ubi iam, as soon as. (ii.)  
of place, where. [= quo-bi,  
locative of qui.]  
Ūbii, -orum, m. pl., a German  
people on the E. bank of  
the Rhine near modern  
Cologne (then Ara Ubi-  
orum), who took part with  
Caesar against the Ger-  
mans, 54.  
ulciscor, -i, ultus, v. dep.,  
avenge, punish.  
ullus, -a, -um, adj., any at  
all. [contr. from ūnulus,  
dim. of unus.]  
ultērior, -us, comp. adj.,  
further. Gallia ult., 7, § 1,  
n.; so provincia ulterior,  
10, etc.  
ultrā, prep. with acc., beyond.  
[cp. ollus (old form of ille),  
ultra, olim.]  
ultrō, adv., beyond, besides,  
unmasked, actually, 42; ultro  
citroque, hither and thither.  
[See ultra.]  
ult-, supine stem of ulciscor.  
umquam, adv., ever.  
unā, adv., at the same time,  
together; especially unā  
cum, together with. [abl.  
f. of unus.]  
undē, adv., whence, from which.  
undīque, adv., from all sides.  
[undē-que, lit. whence so-  
ever.]  
ūnus, -a, -um, adj., one, one  
only. [cp. Engl. one.]  
urbs, urbis, f., city, especially  
the city (of Rome); maturat  
ab urbe proficisci, 7. [lit.  
stronghold.]  
usquē, adv., even; usque ad,  
right up to, 51. [= ubique;  
i.e. ubi, s (locative), quēd  
(abl. of quis).]  
ūsus, part. from utor.  
ūsus, -ūs, m., use, employ-  
ment, service, advantage:

- experience*, 39; *ex usu*, *to the advantage of*, 30, *advantageous*, 50; *usui*, *predicative dative, of service*, 38. [utor.]
- ut**, **ŭti**, (i.) *adv.*, *as, when, how, in which manner*; (ii.) *final conj.*, *that, in order that, to*; (iii.) *consecutive*, *so that, that*; *fiabat ut, it happened that; namely that*, 4, etc.
- ŭter**, -tra, -trum (g. -trius, d. -tri), *interrog. pron.*, *which of the two*.
- ŭterquē**, *utraque, utrumque*, *indef. pron.*, *each of two, both*.
- ŭti**. See *ut*.
- ŭtor**, -i, *ŭsus*, v. dep., *use, make use of; adopt plan*, 5; *enjoy peace, etc.*
- utrimque**, *adv.*, *on both sides*. [uterque.]
- utrum**, *adv.*, *whether*; *utrum ... an, whether ... or, utrum ... necne (or not)*, 50. [uter.]
- uxor**, -ōris, f., *wife*.
- vāco**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. n., *be empty, be unoccupied*.
- vādum**, -i, n., *ford, shoal, shallow*; *vado transitur*, 6, *can be forded*.
- vāgor**, -ari, -atus, v. dep., *wander*. [cp. *veho*.]
- vāleo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. n., *am strong, prevail*; *plurimum v.*, 17, *have very great weight*; *pudor valet*, 40, *has the upper hand*.
- Vālērius**, -i, m., *Gaius Vale-rius Flaccus*, *pro-praetor in Gaul*, B.C. 83, c. 47.
- vallum**, -i, n., *palisade, rampart*. [collective of *vallus* = *stake*.]
- Vangŭōnes**, -um, m. pl., *German people on left bank of Rhine near Worms*, 51.
- vasto**, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *lay waste, ravage*.
- vātīcinātio**, -ōnis, f., *divination*. [vaticinor, vates.]
- vē**, *enclitic particle, or*.
- vectīgal**, -ālis, n., *tax, public revenue*. [vectus (from vēho).]
- vectus**, -a, -um, *adj.* See vēho.
- věhēmēter**, *adv.*, *hotly, greatly*. [vehemens, lit. *out of one's mind*.]
- věho**, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, v. a., *carry, bring*; *equo vectus, riding*, 43. [cp. *via, vexo*; Eng. *waggon*.]
- vel**, *conj.*, *or*; *vel ... vel, either ... or*. [old *imperat. of volo*.]
- vělim**, *vellem*, from *volo* (*velle*); *quid sibi vellet, what was his object*, 44.
- vělox**, -ōcis, *adj.*, *swift, speedy, quick*. [cp. *vōlare* = *fly*.]
- věl-ŭt**, *adv.*, *just as*.
- věnio**, -ire, *vēni*, *ventum*, v. n., *come*; *venire in spem*, 18, etc., *to entertain the hope*; *so magnam in spem venire*, 42, *entertain great hopes*.
- Verbigēnus**, -i, m., *one of the four Helvetian cantons*, 27.
- verbum**, -i, n., *word*. [cp. English word.]

- vēreor, -ēri, -ītus, v. dep., *fear, dread*. [cp. ὀπάω, English *ward*.]  
 vergo, -ēre, v. n., *incline, lie*; vergitad Septentriones, c. l.  
 vėrgobrėtus, -i, m., Celtic name of the chief magistrate of the Aedui, 16.  
 vėro, adv., *indeed, in truth, but*. [verus.]  
 verso, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *keep turning, change*; cum his versabantur, 48, *with these they were associated*; inter aciem versabantur, 52, *were in the thick of the battle*. [freq. of verto.]  
 verto, -ēre, -i, -sum, v. a., *turn*; tergum v., *turn in flight*.  
 Verucloetius, -i, m., one of the Helvetii sent as an ambassador to Caesar, 7.  
 vėrus, -a, -um, adj., *true*.  
 Vėsontio, -ōnis, m., chief town of the Sequani on the Dubis, now Besançon, 38, 39.  
 vesper, -ēris and -ēri, m., *evening*. [ἑσπερος, ἑσπέρα.]  
 vėtėrānus, -a, -um, adj., *veteran, experienced*; esp. subst. *veteran*, i.e. a tried soldier opp. to raw recruits. [vetus.]  
 vėtūs, -ēris, adj., *ancient, old*. [cp. ěros = *year*.]  
 vexo, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a., *harass, ravage*. [freq. of veho; so muto, moveo; root veh, cp. vehiculum, via, velum.]  
 via, -ae, f., *way, route*. [See vexo.]  
 victor, -ōris, m., *conqueror*; adj., *victorious*. [vinco.]  
 victōria, -ae, f., *victory, conquest*.  
 victus, -a, -um, part of vinco, *conquered*.  
 victus, -ūs, m., *food, living, mode of life*. [vivo.]  
 vīcus, -i, m., *village*. [cp. oikos, Engl. -wick, e.g. Berwick.]  
 vīdeo, -ēre, vīdi, vīsum, v. a., *see*; pass., usually but not always, *seem*. [cp. εἶδov, Engl. wit.]  
 vīgīlia, -ae, f., *wakefulness, watch*; as a division (one-fourth) of the night: de primā, secundā, tertiā, quartā vīgiliā, *about the first, second, etc., watch*; these being respectively 6 P.M.—9 P.M., 9 P.M.—midnight, midnight—3 A.M., 3 A.M.—6 A.M. [vigil = *watchful*.]  
 vīgintī, card. adj., *twenty*.  
 vincio, -ire, -nxi, -nctum, v. a., *bind*.  
 vinco, -ēre, vīci, victum, v. a., *conquer, surpass*.  
 vinctus, -a, -um, part. of vincio.  
 vincūlum, vinclum, -i, n., *chain, bond*. [vincio.]  
 vīrēs, -ium, f. pl., *strength, power*.  
 virtūs, -ūtis, f., *valour, virtue*.  
 vis (vim, vi), f., *force, violence, influence*; vi. 6, per

- vim, 14, *by force*; vim  
 facere, *employ force*, 8;  
 vis hostium *the violence of  
 the enemy* pl. vires,  
*strength, power*.  
 vīsus, -a, -um, part. of video;  
 pro-viso, *as if seen*.  
 vīta, -ae, f., *life*. [vivo, cp.  
 βίος.]  
 vīto, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a.,  
*avoid*.  
 vix, adv., *scarcely, with diffi-  
 culty*, 6. [perhaps cp.  
 vinco.]  
 Voccio, -ōnis, m., prince in  
 Noricum, brother-in-law of  
 Ariovistus, 53.  
 vōco, -are, -avi, -atum, v. a.,  
*call, summon*.  
 Vocontii, -orum, m. pl., a  
 people in the Provincia,  
 between the Isère and  
 Durance, 10.  
 volgo or vulgo, adv., *com-  
 monly, generally, every-  
 where*. [volgus.]  
 volgus or vulgus, -i, n.,  
 rarely m., *common people,  
 the mass*; existimatione  
 vulgi, 20, *public opinion*.  
 volnĕro or vulnero, -are, -avi,

- atum, v. a., *wound*. [vol-  
 nus.]  
 volnus or vulnus, -ĕris, n.,  
*wound*; v. inferre, *inflict a  
 wound*. [cp. vello = *tear*.]  
 vōlo, -ui, velle, v. n., *wish, be  
 willing*; si quid se velit,  
 34, *if he wanted anything  
 with him*; quid sibi vellet,  
*what did he mean*; si id  
 minus vellet, 47, *if he were  
 unwilling to do that*.  
 voltus or vultus, -ūs, m.,  
*countenance*; voltum fin-  
 gere, *to assume a (cheerful)  
 expression*, 50.  
 vōluntās, -ātis, f., *will, wish,  
 desire, inclination, goodwill,  
 favour*; eius voluntate, *by  
 his leave*, 7, 35, etc. [volo.]  
 vōluptās, -ātis, f., *pleasure*.  
 [cp. ἔλπω = *hope*, volo.]  
 vox, vōcis, f., *voice, word,  
 speech, remark*; pl., *talk,  
 remarks*, 39. [voco.]  
 vulgus, see volgus.  
 vulnero. See volnĕro.  
 vulnus, -ĕris, n., later form  
 of volnus.  
 vultus, -ūs, m., later form of  
 voltus.



# MACMILLAN'S ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

Pott 8vo, Eighteenpence each.

The following contain Introductions, Notes, and Vocabularies, and in some cases Exercises :—

## ACCIDENCE, LATIN, AND EXERCISES ARRANGED FOR BEGINNERS.

By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

**Aeschylus.**—**PROMETHEUS VINCTUS.** By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

**Arrian.**—**Selections.** With Exercises. By Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**Aulus Gellius, Stories from.** Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A., Assistant Master at Westminster.

**Caesar.**—**THE HELVETIAN WAR.** Selections from Book I., adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

**THE INVASION OF BRITAIN.** Selections from Books IV. and V., adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By the same.

**SCENES FROM BOOKS V. and VI.** By C. COLBECK, M.A.

**TALES OF THE CIVIL WAR.** By C. H. KEENE, M.A.

**THE GALLIC WAR.** Book I. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Books II. and III. By the Rev. W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D.

Book IV. By CLEMENT BRYANS, M.A.

Book V. By C. COLBECK, M.A., Assistant Master at Harrow.

Book VI. By C. COLBECK, M.A.

Book VII. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**THE CIVIL WAR.** Book I. By M. MONTGOMREY, M.A.

**Cicero.**—**DE SENECTUTE.** By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

**DE AMICITIA.** By the same.

**STORIES OF ROMAN HISTORY.** Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A., and A. V. JONES, M.A.

**Curtius (Quintus).**—**SELECTIONS.**—Adapted for Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises. By F. COVERLEY SMITH.

**Euripides.**—**ALCESTIS.** By Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

**MEDEA.** By Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

**HECUBA.** By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**Eutropius.**—Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

Books I. and II. By the same.

**Exercises in Unseen Translation in Latin.** By W. WELCH, M.A., and Rev. C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

**Herodotus, Tales from.** Atticized. By G. S. FARNELL, M.A.

**Homer.**—**ILIAD.** Bk. I. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Book VI. By WALTER LEAF, Litt.D., and Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD.

Book XVIII. By S. R. JAMES, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton.

Book XXIV. By W. LEAF, Litt.D., and Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

**ODYSSEY.** Book I. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**Horace.**—**ODES.** Books I., II., III. and IV. separately. By T. E. PAGE, M.A., Assistant Master at the Charterhouse. Each 1s. 6d.

**Livy.**—Book I. By H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

Book V. By M. ALFORD.

Book XXI. Adapted from Mr. CAPES's Edition. By J. E. MELHUISE, M.A.

Book XXII. Adapted from Mr. CAPES's Edition. By J. E. MELHUISE, M.A.

**SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS V. and VI.** By W. CECIL LAMING, M.A.

**THE HANNIBALIAN WAR.** BOOKS XXI. and XXII. Adapted by G. C. MACAULAY, M.A.

Books XXIII. and XXIV. By E. P. COLERIDGE, B.A.

**THE SIEGE OF SYRACUSE.** Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By G. RICHARDS, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**LEGENDS OF ANCIENT ROME.** Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By H. WILKINSON, M.A.

**Lucian.**—**EXTRACTS FROM LUCIAN.** With Exercises. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**Nepos.**—**SELECTIONS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GREEK AND ROMAN HISTORY.** With Exercises. By G. S. FARNELL, M.A.



MACMILLAN'S ELEMENTARY CLASSICS—*Continued.*

- Ovid.**—SELECTIONS. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.  
EASY SELECTIONS FROM OVID IN ELEGIAC VERSE. With Exercises. By H. WILKINSON, M.A.  
STORIES FROM THE METAMORPHOSES. With Exercises. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.  
TRISTIA. Book I. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.  
Book III. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.  
**Phaedrus.**—FABLES. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.  
SELECT FABLES. Adapted for Beginners. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.  
**Pliny.**—SELECTIONS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ROMAN LIFE. By C. H. KEENE, M.A.  
**Sallust.**—JUGURTHINE WAR. By E. P. COLERIDGE, B.A.  
**Thucydides.**—THE RISE OF THE ATHENIAN EMPIRE. Book I. Chs. 89-117 and 228-238. With Exercises. By F. H. COLSON, M.A.  
THE FALL OF PLATAEA. AND THE PLAGUE AT ATHENS. From Books II. and III. By W. T. SUTHERY, M.A., and A. S. GRAVES, B.A.  
**Virgil.**—SELECTIONS. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.  
BUCOLICS. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
GEORGICS. Book I. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
Book II. By Rev. J. H. SKRINE, M.A.  
Book III. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
Book IV. By T. E. PAGE, M.A. [In preparation.]  
AENEID. Book I. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.  
Book I. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
Book II. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
Book III. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
Book IV. By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.  
Book V. By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.  
Book VI. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.  
Book VII. By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.  
Book VIII. By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.  
Book IX. By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.  
Book X. By S. G. OWEN, M.A. [In preparation.]  
**Xenophon.**—ANABASIS. Selections, adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.  
Book I. With Exercises. By E. A. WELLS, M.A.  
Book I. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.  
Book II. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.  
Book III. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.  
Book IV. By Rev. E. D. STONE, M.A.  
Book V. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.  
Book VI. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.  
Book VII. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.  
SELECTIONS FROM BK. IV. With Exercises. By Rev. E. D. STONE, M.A.  
SELECTIONS FROM THE CYROPAEDIA. With Exercises. By A. H. COOKE, M.A.  
TALKS FROM THE CYROPAEDIA. With Exercises. By C. H. KEENE, M.A.  
SELECTIONS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GREEK LIFE. By C. H. KEENE, M.A.  
  
The following contain Introductions and Notes, but no Vocabulary :—  
**Cicero.**—SELECT LETTERS. By Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A.  
**Herodotus.**—SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS VII. AND VIII. THE EXPEDITION OF XERXES. By A. H. COOKE, M.A.  
**Horace.**—SELECTIONS FROM THE SATIRES AND EPISTLES. By Rev. W. J. V. BAKER, M.A.  
SELECT EPODES AND ARS POETICA. By H. A. DALTON, M.A.  
**Plato.**—EUTHYPHRO AND MENEXENUS. By C. E. GRAVES, M.A.  
**Terence.**—SCENES FROM THE ANDRIA. By F. W. CORNISH, M.A., Vice-Provost of Eton.  
**The Greek Elegiac Poets.**—FROM CALLINUS TO CALLIMACHUS. Selected by Rev. HERBERT KYNASTON, D.D.  
**Thucydides.**—Book IV. Chs. 1-41. THE CAPTURE OF SPHACTERIA. By C. E. GRAVES, M.A.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD., LONDON.

